### INDUSTRIAL CHEMISTRY

# BEING A SERIES OF VOLUMES GIVING A COMPREHENSIVE SURVEY OF

### THE CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES

EDITED BY SAMUEL RIDEAL, D.Sc. LOND, F.I.C. FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON

#### ASSISTED BY

EDWARD DE BARRY BARNETT,
B.Sc., A.I.C.
M. BARROWCLIFF, F.I.C.
H. GARNER BENNETT, M.Sc.
F. H. CARR, F.I.C.
S. HOARE COLLINS, M.Sc., F.I.C.
H. H. GRAY, B.Sc.

JAMES A. AUDLEY, B.Sc.

the second of th

H. C. GREENWOOD, D.Sc.
J. R. PARTINGTON, M.A.
ARTHUR E. PRATT, B Sc., Assoc. R.S M
ERIC K. RIDEAL, PH.D., M.A.
W. H. SIMMONS, B.Sc., F.I.C.
SAMUEL SMILES, D.Sc.
D. A. SUTHERLAND, F.I.C.
C. M. WHITTAKER, B.Sc.

. .

&c., &c.



# COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

RV

### E. DE BARRY BARNETT, B.Sc. Lond., A.I.C.

CONSULTING CHEMIST TO EAGLEY, MILLS AND CO, LTD., FORMERLY RESEARCH - CHEMIST TO LEVINSTEIN, LTD, AND WORKS MANAGER TO THE STOCKTON-ON-TEES CHEMICAL WORKS, LTD.



LONDON
BAILLIÈRE, TINDALL AND COX
8, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN
1919

All rights reserved

667.2 H:91

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN



### GENERAL PREFACE

THE rapid development of Applied Chemistry in recent years has brought about a revolution in all branches of technology. This growth has been accelerated during the war, and the British Empire has now an opportunity of increasing its industrial output by the application of this knowledge to the raw materials available in the different parts of the world. The subject in this series of handbooks will be treated from the chemical rather than the engineering standpoint. industrial aspect will also be more prominent than that of the laboratory. Each volume will be complete in itself, and will give a general survey of the industry, showing how chemical principles have been applied and have affected manufacture. The influence of new inventions on the development of the industry will be shown, as also the effect of industrial requirements in stimulating invention. Historical notes will be a feature in dealing with the different branches of the subject, but they will be kept within moderate limits. Present tendencies and possible future developments will have attention, and some space will be devoted to a comparison of industrial methods and progress in the chief producing countries. There will be a general bibliography, and also a select bibliography to tollow each section. Statistical information will only be introduced in so far as it serves to illustrate the line of argument.

Each book will be divided into sections instead of chapters, and the sections will deal with separate branches of the subject in the manner of a special article or monograph. An attempt will, in fact, he made to get away from

the orthodox textbook manner, not only to make the treatment original, but also to appeal to the very large class of readers already possessing good textbooks, of which there are quite sufficient. The books should also be found useful by men of affairs having no special technical knowledge, but who may require from time to time to refer to technical matters in a book of moderate compass, with references to the large standard works for fuller details on special points if required.

To the advanced student the books should be especially valuable. His mind is often crammed with the hard facts and details of his subject which trowd out the power of realizing the industry as a whole. These books are intended to remedy such a state of affairs. While recapitulating the essential basic facts, they will aim at presenting the reality of the living industry. It has long been a drawback of our technical education that the college graduate, on commencing his industrial career, is positively handicapped by his academic knowledge because of his lack of information on current industrial conditions. A book giving a comprehensive survey of the industry can be of very material assistance to the student as an adjunct to his ordinary textbooks, and this is one of the chief objects of the present series. Those actually engaged in the industry who have specialized in rather narrow limits will probably find these books more readable than the larger textbooks when they wish to refresh their memories in regard to branches of the subject with which they are not immediately concerned.

The volume will also serve as a guide to the standard literature of the subject, and prove of value to the consultant, so that, having obtained a comprehensive view of the whole industry, he can go at once to the proper authorities for more elaborate information on special points, and thus save a couple of days spent in hunting through the libraries of scientific societies.

As far as this country is concerned, it is believed that the general scheme of this series of handbooks is unique, and it is confidently hoped that it will supply mental munitions for the coming industrial war. I have been fortunate in securing writers for the different volumes who are specially connected with the several departments of Industrial Chemistry, and trust that the whole series will contribute to the further development of applied chemistry throughout the Empire.

SAMUEL RIDEAL.



### AUTHORS PREFACE

In the following pages the Author has endeavoured to give a clear account of the most important synthetic dyes and the intermediate compounds from which they are derived. No attempt has been made to enumerate all the intermediate compounds and dyestuffs actually manufactured, nor to give all the processes that have been proposed for the manufacture of those mentioned, but as far as possible the Author has confined himself to those processes most likely to prove of technical value. Also, the book being essentially one on Industrial Chemistry, information of purely academic interest has been largely omitted except in a few cases where it was thought advisable to give it.

The number of patents taken out by the German firms for the manufacture of intermediate products and dyestuffs is very large, and in spite of the optimistic claims made in the specifications, only a few of them are workable as commercial propositions. It has long been the custom of these firms, when taking up a subject, to put down a barrage of patents in order to block access and at the same time to act as a kind of camouflage and disguise the processes actually in use. For the same reason the specifications are usually carefully drawn up so as to give as little information as is compatible with validity, and much skill is exhibited in this direction. Consequently the reader who finds a patent describing a process in detail must not conclude that he has all the information necessary in order to manufacture. No doubt the description given will enable him to make the compound in question, but whether it will enable him to do so at a profit is quite another question.

In the same way the detailed descriptions of processes which appear from time to time in the technical Press must not be taken too seriously. The majority of them seem to be written either by men who have no technical experience or are written with intent to deceive.

There is no short cut to success in chemical industry, and the only satisfactory method is to gather all information available and then try out the various processes in the laboratory. Having selected the most promising, it must then be thoroughly examined with a view to determining the most economical conditions, which are not necessarily those giving the best yield. Manufacturing cost is made up of many items, such as cost of material, cost of power, labour, deterioration of plant, interest on capital, etc., and in determining the most economical process, each of these must be taken into consideration. For example, a process giving a good yield but requiring much time may well be less economical on the score of capital charges than another process giving a less good yield but requiring less time and hence less plant per unit output. In the same way deterioration is a serious item in a chemical works, and yield must frequently give way to lessened corrosion.

Finally, after the most economical conditions have been determined as far as possible in the laboratory, the process must be tried out on a semi-large scale in plant constructed on the same lines and of the same material as the proposed manufacturing installation but of about one-tenth the size. Unfortunately many British works omit this most important step and go on the theory that, if a process gives good results in glass apparatus on the laboratory scale, it will give equally good results in iron plant in the works. A greater mistake could not be made, and to transfer a process direct from the laboratory to the works is to court failure. Even if the laboratory process does prove well suited to large-scale operations, the practical hints gained by a semi-large scale trial will more than repay the cost of

such experimental work.

For the benefit of those readers who are not accustomed to looking up patent literature, attention is drawn to the fact that two German works have been published dealing exclusively with organic chemical patents. Friedländer's "Fortschritte der Teerfarbenfabrikation," i.-ix., 1877-1914, and Winter's "Patente der organischen Chemie," in three volumes 1877-1905. both publications the specifications are classified with regard to the chemical nature of the substances dealt with. each group being preceded by a carefully written survey. They form by far the most convenient source of patent information, and for this reason most of the references in the following pages have been given to the German patent rather than to the British. The third volume of Winter's "Patente" contains a table of German patent numbers, together with the numbers of the corresponding British, French, and American patents, the use of which frequently saves a weary search in the Patent Office.

E. DE BARRY BARNETT.

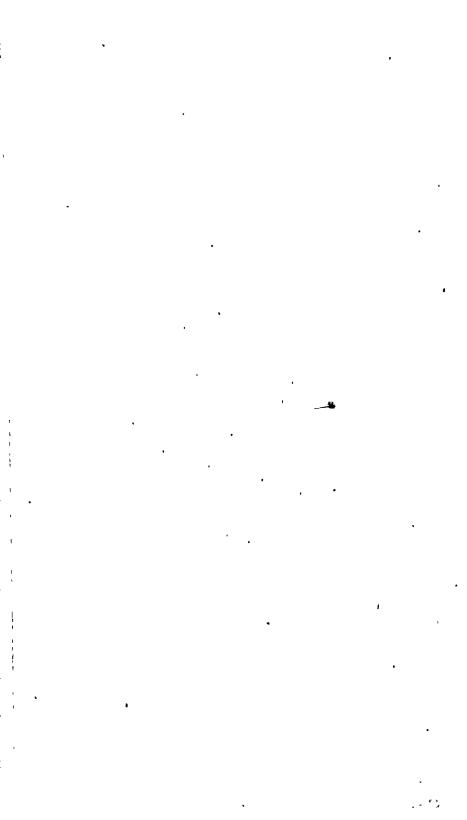
London, 7anuary, 1919.



## CONTENTS

GENERAL	PREFA	CE							•			PAGE V
AUTHOR'S	PREFA	CE					•,					ix
ABBREVIA	rions	•		•		•		•	•		•	<b>xv</b> ıi
		•	INT	rro	DU	CTI	ON.					
Historical Sk and Cons	etch. T stitution.	echni No	ical I meno	ifficul lature	lties. . Bi	Futu bliogr	re of t aphy	he Ind	lustr <b>y</b>	. Co	lour	
	-											
				P/	ART.	I.	1					
THE	INT	(E	RM					M	OU	ŀNI	OS.	,
	S	EC:	CIO	N I	.—1	ITI	RAI	'IOI	٦.			
Mononitrober Trinitrot Nitronay Acids.	oluol. I hthalene	Nitro:	xylol. initro	Nit onapht	rochl halen	orbenz e. N	ole. itrone	Dinit phtha	rochle telne (	orbena Sulph	zole. onic	
	SI	ECI	OI	N I	I.—.	IMA	DA.	ΓΙΟ	N.			
phonic G Acid Tolidine	luidine. niline, D Amino Acid. Amir Diani	imetlopher Naph to R sidine	nylani nol. thyla Aci D	iline. Amine mine. d. A iphen	Mono Salic Br Mino ylami	lic A lic A inner' napht	Dieth cid. s Aci hol I Anthr	ylanil Diam d. F R Ac anilic	ine, I inostil Acid id. I Acid.	Foluyl bened l. Ai Benzio An	lene- lisul- mino dine nino-	•

CC	NTEN	TS					ΧV
SECTION IV. — THE	E DIE	HEN	ZLM	ETH	IAN	E	PAGE
	DYES				•		111
•	_	_	-				
		·					
SECTION V. — THE			ZLM	ETF	IAN	E	
	DYES	· .	•	•	•	•	113
<ol> <li>The Malachite Green Group</li> <li>The Fuchsines or Rosaniline Gr</li> </ol>					•	•	114
<ol> <li>The Fuchsines or Rosaniline Gr</li> <li>The Aurines or Rosolic Acids</li> <li>The Phthaleins and Rhodamines</li> </ol>	· •	. :	•	•		:	1,16 123
4. The Phthaleins and Rhodamine	s .		•		•	•	124
•							
SECTION VI.—THE			AN	D I	ND	၁-	
. PH	IENOL	s.	•	•	. •		128
SECTION V	II.—TI	HE A	ZINI	ES	•	•	133
1. The Simple Azines				•			134
2. The Eurhodines	anines and	Induline	3) .	•	:	:	137 139
•							
SECTION VII	יד מיני	E 07	A 77 T	ATT: C	ı		•
	.ı.—ı <sub>.</sub> n					٠	149
Resorufin and Resazurin	•	• •	•	•	•	•	153
,							
~~~~~~	~-~-						
SECTION IX.	.—·THE	THI.	AZII	NES	•	•	154
	_			•			
				· <del>-</del>			
SECTION X.—THE	INDIC	OID	DYE	STU	FFS	3	160
1. The Indigos				•	:	:	160 166



# COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

### INTRODUCTION

Historical Sketch.—Although picric acid was obtained from phenol as far back as 1849, the expense of production was so great that it could not be manufactured for use as a dyestuff. The modern coal-tar colour industry dates from 1856, in which year W. H. Perkin, senior, obtained mauveine by the action of potassium bichromate on impure aniline, and set up a factory at Greenford Green for its manufacture. It must be borne in mind that at this period the constitution of benzene was quite unknown, and that the methods of obtaining it from coal tar were very crude, so that investigations of its derivatives could only be carried out with difficulty and more or less on the hit-or-miss principle.

Perkin's discovery naturally excited great interest, and immediately led to the investigation of the action of other oxidizing agents on crude aniline. This resulted in the discovery of magenta in 1859 by Verguin, who obtained it by heating aniline with stannic chloride and manufactured it on a commercial scale in conjunction with Renard frères et Frank at Lyons. Although Verguin was the first to manufacture magenta he was not the actual discoverer of the dyestuff, as it had been obtained from aniline and ethylene chloride by Natanson in 1856, and from aniline and carbon tetrachloride by Hofmann in 1857, although by neither of these processes was it made technically. Further study led to the introduction of the arsenic acid process in 1860 and the nitrobenzole process in 1861. Another important discovery, the full value of which was not recognized at

τ

the time, resulted from experiments made in the oxidation of aniline. In 1862 Lightfoot obtained aniline black, and in the next year patented methods of applying it to the fibre.

The study of benzene derivatives was still carried on by purely empirical methods, and in 1860 Girard and de Laire obtained the first synthetic blue dye (rosaniline blue) by heating magenta with aniline, without, however, understanding the nature of the chemical reaction. Rosaniline blue had the great disadvantage of being insoluble in water, but this was remedied by Nicholson in 1862, who obtained soluble sulphonic acids (Nicholson's blue) by treating it with sulphuric acid. This was an epoch-making discovery, as, a few years later, it rendered possible the use of azo bodies as acid dyes.

The next step was made by Hofmann, who recognized rosaniline blue as a phenylated rosaniline, and at once set to work to make the corresponding ethyl derivatives. he achieved in 1863, when he introduced Hofmann's violet. obtained by treating rosaniline with ethyl iodide, and three years later the process was carried a step further by Keisser, who introduced a more highly ethylated compound, iodine green. These only had a short life as dyestuffs, as in 1866 Lauth and Bardy investigated the action of oxidizing agents on the recently discovered dimethyl aniline and obtained methyl violet. This was manufactured by the firm of Poirrier et Chappat and owing to its lower price, rapidly replaced Hofmann's violet. In the meantime the magenta process had not been neglected and several investigations had been carried out on the bye-products formed. These led to the isolation of chrysaniline by Nicholson in 1862, although its constitution as an acridine derivative was not recognized until 1884, and of saffranine by Perkin in 1863.

The next year, 1864, saw the introduction of the first azo colour (Bismarck brown), although it was not until twelve years later that the full importance of this discovery was recognized, by which time Griers and Kekulé had published their work on the constitution of the diazo and azo compounds.

Until 1865 aniline colours had only been obtained by purely empirical methods, but in this year Kekulé published his benzené theory, and at once placed the whole chemistry of the aromatic compounds on a scientific basis. One of the most important discoveries immediately following the enunciation of the benzene theory was the synthesis of alizarine in 1869 by Perkin in this country, and by Graebe and Liebermann in Germany. Apart from the commercial interest the discovery was notable, as it was the first time that a plant dyestuff had been made synthetically, and it was the first time that the process of alkali fusion was carried out on the large scale.

The year 1871 saw the introduction of fluoresceine and 1874 eosin.

Two important discoveries were made at this period. In 1873 Bretonierre obtained the first sulphide colour (cachou de Laval) by heating organic refuse such as straw, wood chips, and the like, with sulphur, and 1875 may be regarded as the birth year of the azo colours. It is true that the first azo colour (Bismarck brown) had been introduced twelve years previously, but it was not until the discovery of chrysoidine in 1875 by Caro that any great importance was attached to the azo compounds as dyestuffs. The next year saw the introduction of acid azo colours (Orange I., II., III. and IV.), and in 1878 Caro found that by using naphthionic acid in place of sulphanilic acid he obtained red azo The same year saw the introduction of naphthol sulphonic acids as components and led to the recognition of the influence of the position of the sulphonic acid groups, the Ponceaux being obtained by coupling diazotized xylidine with R or G acid. A year later the first disazo dye (Biebrich scarlet) was placed on the market, and four years after the first black azo dye was obtained by substituting naphthionic acid for sulphanilic acid.

In the meantime the other groups of dyes had not been neglected. In 1877 Caro had applied Nicholson's sulphonation process to magenta, and had obtained acid magenta, and in 1878 Döbner had introduced malachite green.

### 4 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

Lauth in 1876 obtained thionine (Lauth's violet), but the yields were so bad that it was never manufactured. The next year, however, saw the introduction of methylene blue by Caro, and the preparation of the first indamine by Nietzki.

The dyestuff industry was now firmly established on a scientific and commercial basis, and steady progress was made in all directions. The discovery in 1884 of Congo red naturally led to the preparation of many other direct cotton colours, and marked progress in this direction has been made.

The success which attended the synthesis of alizarine naturally raised hopes that a technically successful synthesis of indigo might be discovered, and the investigation was undertaken by Bayer. In 1880 he completed a synthesis, starting with nitrobenzaldehyde; but the cost of production was too high for the synthetic product to compete with that obtained from natural sources. Success was achieved by Heumann in 1897, who obtained the dyestuff by the alkali fusion of phenyl glycine or phenyl glycine ortho carboxylic acid, and so successful did this process prove that at the outbreak of the war the natural article had almost disappeared from the market. The introduction of the synthetic dyestuff at once led to closer investigation of the derivatives of indigo, and the introduction of the valuable chlor and brom indigos.

The next notable advance was achieved in 1903, when Bally introduced indanthrene. This was the first vat dyestuff other than indigo to be prepared, and naturally attracted great attention, and led to a very close study of the chemistry of anthraquinone. As a result of these studies a very large variety of anthraquinone vat dyes have been placed on the market, most of which are remarkable for their fastness to light.

Another very important class of vat colours is due to Friedländer's discovery on thioindigo in 1906, and in 1910 the introduction of hydrone blue showed that the sulphur melt in some cases could yield vat colours.

materials that resist acid. Sulphuric acid can be handled in lead, although the hot, strong acid attacks it very vigorously, and if over 70 per cent. strength can be handled in iron. Strong, cold nitric acid can be handled in lead or iron, but attacks most metals very vigorously when dilute. Hydrochloric acid attacks all metals, and can only be handled in glass, stoneware, ebonite, or enamelled iron. Enamelled iron is satisfactory so long as the enamel remains intact, but it is easily chipped, and the first chip renders the vessel useless. For this reason autoclaves which require to be of enamelled iron are built of a steel outer case and thin enamelled iron liner.

Ferrosilicon alloys have come much to the front during the last five years, and resist acids excellently. Unfortunately they are expensive, very brittle, and too hard to be machined, so that at present their use is limited.

Future of the Industry.—Owing to the enormous strides that have been made in the colour industry since its foundation sixty-two years ago, it is difficult to indicate in what direction future developments will lie. A huge number of synthetic dyes have now been studied, of which about 1500 are actually on the market. Of these, some are extremely fast, whereas others leave much to be desired in this respect. As a rule the fast colours are a good deal more expensive than the fugitive ones, and it is probable that future research will largely be directed towards the production of fast colours at a moderate price. The main bulk of the trade is in cheap colours, the demand for the more expensive ones being comparatively small.

So far almost all the synthetic dyes have been derived from five hydrocarbons, viz. benzene, toluene, xylene, naphthalene and anthracene. During recent years a few colours have been obtained from phenanthrene and carbazole, and it would seem probable that the other constituents of coal tar will find application in the near future.

Up to 1914 about 80 per cent. of the world's production of dyes was centred in Germany owing to the recognition by that country of the value and necessity of research.

compounds that are coloured can be written so as to contain one of these structures. It was immediately argued that certain compounds, such as *m*-nitraniline and benzil, are coloured, although they cannot be written in a quinonoid form. To this the votaries of the quinonoid theory replied by asserting that the colour in these cases was due to a trace of impurity, and would disappear if the compound could be obtained absolutely pure. Such an argument was, of course, unanswerable.

The colour of a compound is due to selective absorption, and a substance which absorbs only those rays which are invisible to the human eye appears colourless. From this it is clear that the only satisfactory method of investigating the relation between colour and constitution lies in a close study of absorption spectra. During recent years a large number of investigations of this nature have been carried out, and the general conclusion arrived at that the property of selective absorption lies in the vibration of the molecule, and it is clear that a quinonoid structure is particularly susceptible to such vibration.

The qes tion cannot be more fully discussed in a book of this nature, but references will be found in the bibliography at the end of this introduction.

Nomenclature.—In the earlier days of the synthetic dyestuff industry the number of dyestuffs was very limited, and they were usually named either after their discoverer, e.g. Martius' yellow, Meldola's blue, or with some reference to their tinctorial properties. This latter system has given rise to names for dyestuffs which are quite misleading if taken as having any bearing on their chemical constitution. For example, azocarmine contains no azo group, alizarine yellow has no chemical relationship with alizarine, and anthracene brown is not derived from anthracene.

A much better system is now in fairly general use. Most of the big firms have a registered trade name for each class of dyes, individual dyes being named by adding a word representing a colour and initials, which usually denote shade, e.g. B=Blau (blue), R=Rot (red), G=Gelb (yellow),

INTRODUCTION tem the dyestuffs are of do

etc. Under this system the dyestuffs are, of course, classified according to their mode of application, viz. acid dyes, vat dyes, sulphide dyes, etc., without reference to their chemical constitution.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY.

German patents dealing with organic chemistry, and with dyesiuffs and intermediates in particular, are published in the following works:—

Friedländer, "Fortschritte der Teerfarbenfabrikation," vols. 1.-xi., 1877-1914.

Winther, "Patente der organischen Chemie," 1877-1908, vols. 1.-iii., vol. iii. being the index.

Heumann, "Anilinfarben u. ihre Fabrikation," vols. i -vi., 1888-1908.

Of general accounts of dyes and intermediates, the following are the most important:—

Schultz, "Chemie der Steinkohlenteers," 1900-1901.

Nietzki, "Organische Farbstoffe," 1906.

Bucherer, "Lehibuch der Farbenchemie," 1914.

Mohlau u. Bucherer, "Farbenchemisches Praktikum," 1908.

Georgievics-Grandmougin, "Lehrbuch der Farbenchemie," 1913.

Cain and Thorpe, "Synthetic Dyestuffs," 1913

Several elementary text-books on coal-tar dyes have appeared during recent years, of which the following may be mentioned:—

Fay, "Chemistry of the Coal Tar Dyes," 1911

Gardner, "British Coal Tar Industry," 1915.

Wahl and Atack, "Organic Dyestuffs," 1914.

Ramsay and Weston, "Artificial Dyestuffs," 1917

Fort and Lloyd, "Chemistry of the Dyestuffs," 1917.

A complete list of dyestuffs actually on the market with their chemical composition, mode of application, and references, will be found in the following:—

Lehne, "Tabellarische Uebersicht ueber die kunstliche organische Farbstoffe," 1894–1906.

Schultz, "Farbstofftabellen," 1914.

The former of these gives experimental dyeings. An English translation of a former edition of the latter was published by Green in 1904, under the title "Systematic Survey of the Organic Colouring Matters." To this translation Green has added a short description of the chief intermediate compounds. These are treated in greater detail in:—

Cain, "Manufacture of Intermediate Products for Dyes," 1918.

Two books have been published devoted exclusively to naphthalene intermediate products, viz.:—

Reverdın u., Fulda, "Tabellarische Uebersicht der Naphthalinderivate," 1894.

Taüber u. Norman, "Derivate des Naphthalins," 1896.

The relation between the colour of a compound and its constitution is fully discussed in:—

Kauffmann, "Farbe u, Konstitution," 1904.

۱ پد

### 10 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

Kauffmann, "Auxochrome," 1907. Kauffmann, "Fluoreszenz u. Chemische Konstitution," 1906. Smiles, "Chemical Constitution and Physical Properties," 1910. Watson, "Colour in Relation to Chemical Constitution," 1918.

The chief periodicals devoted to dyestnffs are:—
Journal of the Society of Dyers and Colourists.
Revue Generale des Matières Colorantes.
Farber Zeitung (Lehne).
Deutsche Färber Zeitung.
Leipziger Färber Zeitung.

And informative articles will often be found in— Chemker-Zeitung (Cothen).

The application of the dyestuffs is treated in this series by Whittaker in "Dyemg with Coal-Tar Dyestuffs," and a bibliography will be found on page 11 of that book.

attacked by nitric acid, so that unless special precautions are taken decomposition takes place, usually accompanied by the formation of resinous substances.

Nitrations are almost invariably carried out in cast-iron vessels of about 1000 gals, or more capacity, as smaller vessels require an undue amount of labour. These nitrators are best cast in one piece, but are frequently built up from two or three sections, the joints being made with lead or asbestos washers. The depth should be about the same as the diameter, and the bottom slightly dished, a run-off cock being bolted to the lowest point. The cover carries an efficient agitator, manhole, charging orifices, one or more thermometers and a vent for carrying off nitrous vapours. This is usually carried through the roof of the building by means of a stoneware pipe, a slight pull (about 1" w.g.) being maintained by means of a steam jet. If benzole is being nitrated it is advisable to connect this vent with a condenser, as otherwise a good deal of benzole will be lost.

Temperature is a very important factor in nitrations and must be under absolute control, as excessive rise may cause the charge to fire, and unless adequate cooling is provided the charge takes an undue time to complete. Some factories rely on a water jacket only; but lead coils are much more satisfactory and give very little trouble if correctly designed. Ill-designed coils, however, are liable to burst. Whether coils or jacket or both are employed they are connected with both the water supply and with the steam main, in the latter case through a suitable reducing valve. If coils alone are used at least four should be provided, each being separately controlled, as by this means should one burst it can be isolated and the charge finished with the remaining ones.

The nitrators should be cast from a good close-grain iron, high in fixed carbon, but low in graphite, sulphur, and phosphorus. Acid-proof irons containing about 15 per cent. of silicon are sometimes used, but they are costly, fragile, and cannot be machined. Also the mechanical difficulties in casting large sizes are very great. They are very useful,

however, when straight nitric acid has to be handled, e.g. in the nitration of phenol.

The composition of the mixed acid varies somewhat according to the nitro compound being made, but a good acid for making mono nitro compounds has the composition:

$HNO_3$	 • •	٠.	28
$H_2SO_4$	 • •		56
$H_2O$	 • •		16

If, however, much strong nitric acid is available, a mixture containing more nitric acid and correspondingly less water can be used. The optimum mixed acid is an economic problem which can only be settled by each factory after taking into consideration what other work is being carried on simultaneously.

Dinitro compounds usually demand a somewhat stronger acid, such as:

$HNO_3$	 • •	 20
$H_2SO_4$	 	 70
$H_2O$	 	 10

the spent acid being fortified with nitric acid and used for mononitration.

The nitration is carried out either by slowly adding the substance to be nitrated to the mixed acid or vice versâ. In making mono nitro compounds it is usually best to adopt the latter procedure, as there is less danger of dinitro compounds being formed. The amount of mixed acid is calculated so as to allow a slight excess of nitric acid, usually about 5 per cent. more than that required by theory. The duration of the nitration is almost entirely dependent on the cooling, and, unless a refrigerator is used, may take a quite excessive time during the summer months.

In selecting hydrocarbons for nitration care should be taken only to use those free from unsaturated paraffins. Some of the benzole and toluol on the market, especially that obtained from cannel coal and rather low temperature carbonization, unless properly purified is apt to be rich in

ethylenic compounds. These are attacked by the mixed acid, and frequently cause emulsification, and hinder the proper separation of the nitro compound.

As most nitro compounds are insoluble in sulphuric acid of moderate strength, the winning of them from the nitration mixture is very simple. The mixture is simply allowed to stand, when it separates into two layers which are drawn off separately. If the nitro compound is solid at the ordinary temperature, separation is allowed to take place at a sufficiently high temperature to maintain the nitro compound in a liquid condition. The freshly separated nitro compound always contains a certain amount of mineral acid. This is removed by washing with water, with or without the addition of alkali. The spent or waste acid should contain under ½ per cent. of nitric acid, and is reconcentrated for further use.

Continuous nitration processes have been described, but have never come into general use. 1

In carrying out nitrations care should be taken to make certain that the reaction is taking place, which can be done by careful observation of the thermometer. Sometimes it happens in cold weather that no action takes place at first, and in this case it should be started by gentle warming. Otherwise no reaction may take place until the whole of the ingredients have been mixed, when nitration may set in with explosive violence.

Care should also be taken to ascertain that the substance to be nitrated is reasonably free from water, as to the author's knowledge at least one disastrous fire has been caused through water having settled out of toluol.

As nitro compounds are poisonous and are readily absorbed through the skin, the plant should be designed so that the workers are not exposed to vapours, and so that they do not have to handle the nitrated substances. In Great Britain the Factory Act compels the provision of special clothes and special accommodation for workers engaged in the manufacture or handling of nitro and amido compounds of benzole and toluole.

Mononitrotoluol.—Nitrate at 35° C. and then heat slowly (about 1° C. every two minutes) to 80° C. and maintain at this point for one hour. The heating must be slow, as heavy frothing is apt to take place. The yields are almost theoretical.

Toluol occurs to a considerable extent in Borneo petroleum, but can only be separated with the utmost difficulty. If, however, the fraction containing the toluol is carefully washed free of unsaturated compounds and then nitrated, only the toluol is attacked, and as mononitrotoluol boils at over 200° C. the fractional separation from the paraffins becomes a simple matter.

The mononitrotoluol obtained by the nitration of toluol is a mixture of all three isomers in the proportion of about 57 per cent. of ortho, 40 per cent. of para, and 3 per cent. of meta. It has a sp.gr. of 1160 and is sold as M.N.T. mixture. On cooling to —10° C. most of the para isomer separates out and can be freed from ortho by whizzing. The expressed oil must then be fractionated *in vacuo* and again cooled and whizzed in order to obtain the ortho nitrotoluol in a reasonable state of purity. *m*-Nitrotoluol is of no technical importance.

```
o-Nitrotoluol .. m.p. —10·5° C., b.p. 223° C., sp.gr. 1168 
m-Nitrotoluol .. m.p. 16° C., b.p. 230° C., sp.gr. 1168 
p-Nitrotoluol .. m.p. 54° C., b.p. 238° C., sp.gr. 1123
```

Many authors have stated that the proportion of isomers formed depends on the temperature of nitration; but this is erroneous.<sup>2</sup>

Dinitrotoluol.—Of the three possible dinitrotoluols only 2.4-dinitrotoluol is of any technical importance. It is prepared by the further nitration of either p-nitrotoluol or of M.N.T. mixture. The former gives a somewhat purer product, but the more general procedure is to use M.N.T. mixture. The nitration is carried out at 60-65° C. by adding 2½ parts of mixed acid to I part of M.N.T. and finally cooking the charge at 80° C. for half an hour. A

in vacuo it can be divided into two parts, one rich in ortho and one rich in para. This latter fraction deposits the para isomer on cooling. This is collected and the oil united with the fraction rich in ortho. This is then again fractionated, and this alternate fractional distillation and cooling continued systematically until fractionation is complete.<sup>3</sup> It is more economical, however, not to carry the separation too far, but to separate part of the ortho and para and then nitrate the residue for dinitrochlorbenzole.

o-Nitrochlorbenzole .. m.p. 32·5° C., b.p. 245° C. at 753 mm.

119° C. at 8 mm.

p-Nitrochlorbenzole .. m.p. 83° C., b.p. 238° C. at 753 mm.

113° C. at 8 mm.

Dinitrochlorbenzole.—The only technically important isomer is 1-chlor-2·4-dinitrobenzole. This can be obtained from chlorbenzole by the entrance of two nitro groups, the nitration being carried out in one step. More usually, however, the nitration is carried out in two steps, as in the manufacture of m-dinitrobenzole. In this case either the crude mixture of mononitro compounds is used direct, or the isomers are partly separated and the residue then nitrated.

Dinitrochlorbenzole being exceptionally toxic, special precaution must be taken to protect the workers handling it. M.p. 38° C.

Nitro groups invariably enter the *naphthalene* nucleus in the a-position.

a-Nitronaphthalene.—Commercial naphthalene is frequently rich in ethylenic hydrocarbons, and if attempts are made to nitrate a sample of this nature heavy frothing takes place and an oily mess is produced which is quite valueless. Good qualities of commercial naphthalene, however, nitrate easily, although there is generally some loss due to oxidation. The naphthalene should be finely powdered and added to the mixed acid through a sieve, as otherwise it has a tendency to ball together.

As naphthalene is volatile some factories connect

the fume pipe of the nitrator with a vertical reflux condenser jacketed with hot water. Cold water must not be used as it condenses the naphthalene in the solid condition and causes endless trouble with choked pipes. The two following methods of working will be found to give good results:—

- (I) One thousand pounds of finely ground naphthalene are shaken slowly through a sieve into a mixed acid composed of 800 lbs. of nitric acid (sp.gr. 1390), 800 lbs. of concentrated vitriol, and 3200 lbs. of waste acid from a previous charge, the temperature being maintained at 45° C. The spent acid is then separated and the crude nitro compound washed up.
- (2) One thousand pounds of naphthalene are slowly added to 1800 lbs. of mixed acid of the composition:

$HNO_8$			• •		• •	32
$H_2SO_4$	• •	• •	••	• •	٠.	53
$H_2O$	• •	• •	• •		• •	15

the temperature being maintained at 70° C. and the charge subsequently cooked for 6 hours at the same temperature.

An interesting process has been patented which may become of interest in view of the forthcoming production of large quantities of weak nitric acid from atmospheric sources. It is based on the observation that whereas straight nitric acid of 25 per cent. strength does not attack naphthalene either hot or cold, nitration takes place when an electric current is passed through the acid. The process has not been used technically up to the present, but now that acid-proof iron can be obtained in satisfactory quality and the mechanical difficulties in manipulating it are to some extent overcome, no difficulty should be experienced in designing a suitable plant.

M.p. 61° C. when pure, but the commercial product melts at 56-58° C.

Dinitronaphthalene.—Further nitration of naphthalene leads to a mixture of 1.5- and 1.8-dinitro compounds, although when the nitration is carried out at a low temperature, and in the presence of a large excess of sulphuric acid,

### 20 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

1.3-dinitronaphthalene is said to be formed.<sup>5</sup> It, however, is of no technical importance.

The nitration is best carried out by adding mononitronaphthalene to mixed acid of the composition—

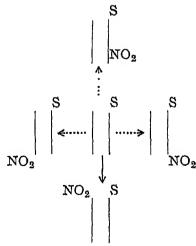
$HNO_3$		 	• •	 32
$H_2SO_4$	• •	 		 62
H <sub>0</sub> O		 		 6

the temperature being maintained at 70° C.

The isomers are formed in the proportion of I part of I·5- and 2 parts of I·8-dinitronaphthalene. As the former is only soluble in I25 parts of cold pyridine whereas the latter is soluble in I0 parts, their separation does not present great difficulties. They can also be separated by taking advantage of their different behaviour with oleum.

r·5-dinitronaphthalene .. m.p. 217° C. r·8-dinitronaphthalene .. m.p. 170° C.

Nitronaphthalene Sulphonic Acid.—When the naphthalene sulphonic acids are nitrated a variety of nitro compounds are obtained. The following diagram, taken from Heumann's "Anilinfarben u. ihre Fabrikation," shows the orientation taken by the entering nitro group. The chief product is shown by a full arrow, side products by dotted arrows—



. . 1

$$\begin{vmatrix} |S| & |S| & |S| \\ |NO_2| & |NO_2| \\ |NO_2| & |S| \\ |NO_2| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| \\ |NO_2| & |S| & |S| & |S| \\ |NO_2| & |S| & |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S| \\ |S| & |S$$

Of these the most important are those obtained by the nitration of naphthalene- $\beta$ -sulphonic acid.

The nitration is carried out by dissolving 230 parts of the sodium salt in 1150 parts of vitriol, the temperature not being allowed to rise above 30° C. The solution is then cooled and nitrated between 0-10° C. with mixed acid containing 70 parts of nitric acid. The isomers are separated by the fractional crystallization of their barium salts, or by taking advantage of the fact that in strong hydrochloric acid or dilute sulphuric acid (1:2), the 1.6-acid is fairly soluble, but the 1.7-acid almost insoluble.

Nitroanthraquinone.—Nitro groups only enter the anthraquinone nucleus in the  $\alpha$ -positions.

The mononitro compound is formed when anthraquinone is dissolved in 20 times its weight of sulphuric acid at 50° C. and nitrated at this temperature by the addition of the calculated amount of nitric acid. As it is soluble in sulphuric acid it can only be isolated by running the charge

on to crushed ice. The crude product is somewhat impure, but it is only used for making the amino compound, and the impurities are eliminated during reduction. By using double the quantity of nitric acid and cooking the charge for about 12 hours at 80° C. a mixture of 1.5- and 1.8-dinitroanthraquinone is obtained. These can be separated by extraction with acetone in which the 1.5 compound is insoluble.

### NITRATION OF AMINES.

Amino compounds present difficulties in nitration as they are readily oxidized by nitric acid, and the nitrous acid so evolved attacks further quantities, so that unless special precautions are taken the product usually consists chiefly of resinous matter.

The best procedure is to protect the amino group by combining it with some group which is readily split off after nitration, such as an acetyl or benzylidene group. Nitration then takes place normally in the ortho and para positions, provided care is taken to select suitable conditions to avoid hydrolysis. When nitration is complete the protecting group is split off by heating with dilute acid.

o-Nitraniline.—This is the least important of the three nitranilines, and is obtained as a side product in the manufacture of p-nitraniline from acetanilide. It can be obtained as the sole product if the para position is first blocked by a sulphonic acid group, subsequently removed by heating with hydrochloric acid under pressure. In these circumstances, however, it is best to substitute oxanilide for acetanilide. M.p. 71.5.

*p*-Nitraniline.—This most important base can be made by three methods.

(a) From benzylidene aniline. The aniline is first converted into its benzylidene (azomethine) derivative by warming with the calculated amount of benzaldehyde:

$$PhNH_2O = CHPh \rightarrow PhN = CHPh + H_2O$$

This benzylidene derivative melts at 42° C., and is

readily separated from the water simultaneously formed, as on standing warm it settles out as a lower layer and can be drawn off. It is nitrated as follows: 181 kilos are added slowly to 70 kilos of concentrated sulphuric acid, the temperature not being allowed to rise above 50° C., and the cooled mixture then nitrated by slowly adding 21.6 kilos of mixed acid containing—

$HNO_3$	• •	• •	• •	 	31
$H_2SO_4$				 	48
$H_2O$				 	21

The nitration must be carried out at a temperature not exceeding 10° C., and the nitrator should be made of enamelled or acid-proof iron. When the nitration is complete the mixture is diluted with its own volume of water and then steam distilled. This hydrolyzes the azomethine compound, the benzaldehyde passing over with the steam and being collected for further use. The residue is then neutralized with soda and deposits p-nitraniline on cooling. The yield is about 90 per cent. of theory, and the loss of benzaldehyde small with properly designed plant and efficient chemical control. Careless working, however, leads to excessive loss.

(b) From acetanilide.—This is the best known process, gives good results, and is easy to carry out as follows:—

400 lbs. of sharply dried and finely powdered acetanilide are slowly added to 800 lbs. of concentrated sulphuric acid, which is kept well agitated in a cast-iron nitrator. Considerable heat is evolved, but the temperature must on no account be allowed to rise above 40° C., as if it does the anilide will be hydrolyzed. The whole of the anilide must dissolve in the acid, which it does fairly easily provided it is finely ground. The solution is then nitrated at 35° C. with 760 lbs. of mixed acid of the composition—

$HNO_3$	 		• •	• •	26
H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>	 • •	• •	• •	••	50
$H_2O$	 • •		• •		24

and after nitration allowed to stand overnight. It is then

run into 200 gals. of warm water contained in a lead-lined vessel. A yellow precipitate of nitroacetanilide separates, which is hydrolyzed and dissolved on heating to 100° C. for 2–3 hours. No resinous products should be formed with good working, but if they are they are removed at this stage. After cooling to 50° the resulting clear solution is run on to 1 ton of crushed ice. The orthonitraniline, being much the weaker base, separates out and is filtered off and whizzed. The p-nitraniline remains in solution as its sulphate and is precipitated by neutralizing the mineral acid, ice being simultaneously added so that the temperature does not rise above 30° C. It is collected, whizzed, and recrystallized from boiling water, which is best done under pressure. The yields are about 25 per cent. of ortho and 60 per cent. of para, calculated on theory.

(c) From Phthalanil.—Although the acetanilide process works well, the acetic acid is lost, and consequently attempts have been made to use an acid that is recoverable. This has been achieved with phthalic acid, 10 the process being carried out as follows: 2.23 kilos of phthanil are dissolved by gentle warming in 14 kilos of concentrated vitriol and then nitrated below 3° C. with 2.55 kilos of a mixed acid containing 25 per cent. of nitric acid. After pouring on to crushed ice the nitrophthanil is heated with 1.1 kilos of aniline for 1 hour at 170–180°. Double decomposition takes place under these circumstances with production of nitraniline and phthanil, and on subsequent distillation with steam unchanged aniline and o-nitraniline pass over. From the residue p-ritraniline is extracted with boiling water and the insoluble phthanil dried and used for the next charge.

Although of no technical importance the preparation of p-nitraniline from p-chlornitrobenzole by heating under pressure with alcoholic ammonia and sodium iodide is worth mentioning. The yields are 66 per cent. of theory, whereas without the addition of iodide they are only 2½ per cent.

m-Nitraniline.—This technically important base cannot be obtained by nitration. Its manufacture by the partial

agitation is continued for an hour or two, and then the thick black oil separated, thoroughly washed and mineral acid carefully neutralized with soda (use congo paper). distilling with steam, superheated if possible, the orthonitrophenol passes over mixed with a little unchanged phenol. and after a further distillation with steam is pure. The residue consists of  $\phi$ -nitrophenol and tar and is treated with a strong solution of 250 lbs. of caustic soda. The sodium salt crystallizes out and is washed with alkaline brine until all the tar is removed. It is then dissolved in water and decomposed with dilute sulphuric or hydrochloric acid. the resulting b-nitrophenol is boiled with animal charcoal and recrystallized from water it is obtained as snow-white needles; but this is a troublesome process, as in the presence of water it melts at 48° C., and for most purposes recrystallization is quite unnecessary.

o-Nitrophenol can be obtained as the sole product if phenol-p-sulphonic acid is nitrated and the sulphonic acid group subsequently removed by heating under pressure, 12 or if the hydroxyl group is protected by combination with toluol-p-sulphonyl chloride, although this latter process is only economically possible when the sulphonyl chloride is available as a bye-product from saccharine manufacture. 13

### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>1</sup> D R.P. 201,623; 228,544; 274,854.

<sup>2</sup> "Direkte Einfürung von Substituenten in den Benzolkern."
Holleman. Leipzig, 1910. Pages 93-98.

<sup>3</sup> D.R.P. 97,013.

<sup>4</sup> D.R.P 100,417.

<sup>5</sup> D.R.P. 96,227.

<sup>8</sup> B. 85, 3403. <sup>7</sup> DR P. 67,017. <sup>8</sup> D.R.P. 66,060 <sup>9</sup> D.R.P. 72,173. <sup>10</sup> D.R P. 141,893.

11 B. 39, 1953. 12 D R P. 43,515 13 D.R.P. 91,314; E.P. 24,193°.

As nitro compounds enter largely into the manufacture of explosives an account of some of them will be found in modern works on this subject, particularly in R. Escales, "Nitrosprengstoffe," Leipzig, 1915. Other modern works on the subject are: Chalon, "Les Explosife Modernes," Paris, 1911; Marshall, "Explosives," London, 1917; and Colver, "High Explosives," London, 1918.

### SECTION II.—AMIDATION

PRIMARY, secondary, and tertiary amino compounds are all used in the manufacture of dyestuffs, although the primary compounds are by far the most important. As a rule the secondary and tertiary amines are prepared from the primary, but in some cases the secondary and tertiary groups can be introduced direct.

Technically, so far as dyestuff intermediates are concerned, only three methods of introducing the amino group into the nucleus are made use of, viz. the reduction of the nitro (and nitroso) compounds, reduction of the azo compounds, and displacement of the hydroxyl group. Of these the reduction of the azo group is not often resorted to as, although good results are obtained, the majority of compounds used as intermediates can be obtained more economically by other means.

The reduction of the nitro compounds is invariably achieved on the large scale by means of iron turnings and hydrochloric acid, except when benzidine and its derivatives are being prepared. The acid acts more or less as a catalyst, only a small quantity being necessary, and as a rule only about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of the amount required to convert the iron into ferric chloride is used. The reaction then proceeds according to the equation—

$$9Fe+4H_2O+4AtNO_2=4AtNH_2+3Fe_3O_4$$

and little or no lime is required to liberate the base. If, on the other hand, sulphuric acid is employed, excess must be taken and the base subsequently liberated by lime. This of course would increase the cost, and in addition the corrosion of the plant would be much more severe, as lead-lined vessels would be unsuitable owing to the scouring action of the iron turnings.

In carrying out reductions, care must be taken to keep the reaction well in hand. Considerable heat is evolved, and if the reduction gets out of control the whole charge may boil over, and in any case there will be very serious loss through the amino group being split off as ammonia.

Reduction of nitro compounds is usually carried out in cast-iron vessels of 700-1000 gallons capacity. The older type, still in use in some works, is in the form of an horizontal cylinder with an agitator shaft pasing through the centre, to which are fixed paddles of such length that they just clear the sides of the vessel. When the shaft is in motion these paddles pick up the iron and throw it through the liquid. In modern factories, however, the vertical type is preferred, the agitator in this case being anchor shaped. In some cases it is made hollow for the introduction of steam; but this is a quite unnecessary complication, and it is better to introduce the steam through a special pipe.

Internal coils are never used for heating or cooling, and in most cases a jacket is dispensed with; but if one is provided the process is under better control and can be carried out in less time.

The cover of the vessel is provided with suitable charging holes, steam inlets, and an opening which can be connected with a reflux condenser while reduction is going on, and with an ordinary condenser when the amino compound is being steamed off.

It is usual to cast the vessels in two parts, as the bottom part always corrodes first, partly by the action of the acid and partly by the scouring effect of the metallic iron. Another plan is to insert a loose cast-iron liner at the bottom, or even to line the lower part with acid-proof brick.

In some factories it is usual to place the whole of the iron and acid into the reducer and then to add slowly the nitro compound; but the reaction is more easy to control if only a small proportion of the iron is first added, the rest being fed in gradually from time to time.

As amino compounds have strong toxic properties every precaution must be taken to protect the workers.

Aniline.—This is the most important intermediate, and is invariably manufactured by the reduction of nitrous benzole. The working of a charge is usually carried out as follows:—

The still is charged with I cwt. of iron turnings, IO gallons of crude muriatic acid, and 6 gallons of water, the agitator started and live steam blown in to warm up. At the same time the nitrobenzole (1000 lbs.) is run in slowly. Much heat is evolved, and nitrobenzole and aniline distil off, but are returned by the reflux condenser. A brisk reaction must be maintained by adding more iron from time to time (about half a ton in all will be required), but the reaction must never be allowed to become violent, as if it does there will be heavy loss through ammonia being split off and benzene formed. The reduction takes about IO hours, and requires steam-heating towards the end to render it complete. The condenser is then reversed and the aniline distilled over with steam.

The condensed water, after separation of the oil, contains about 3 per cent. of aniline, and is fed to the boilers for generating steam for the next charge. Clean steam, however, must be used towards the end so as to leave the iron residues free of aniline.

The aniline oil thus obtained is either used as such or is purified by fractionation *in vacuo*, when the first portions that come over contain water and benzene. The yield of aniline oil from 1000 lbs. of nitrobenzole is on the average 720 lbs., or 1000 lbs. of benzole give 1100 lbs. of aniline.

M.p 6° C.; b.p. 71° C. at 9 mm., 92° C. at 33 mm., 182° C. at 760 mm.; sp.gr. 1025 at 15° C. The commercial article should have the correct density and 98 per cent. should distil within two degrees.

The electrolytic reduction 1 of nitrobenzole has been described, as has also the reduction by sodium disulphide, 2 but they cannot compete with the iron method.

The catalytic reduction by passing a mixture of nitrobenzole and water gas over nickel at 300-400° C. has been tried, but is not yet a commercial success.<sup>8</sup>

1738

667.2

N191

Aniline Salt, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>HCl.—This is used to a large extent for making dyestuffs and intermediates, and is sold for aniline black dyeing. It is manufactured by slowly adding 130–135 parts of pure commercial hydrochloric acid to 100 parts of aniline, the whole being well agitated. Much heat and fume is evolved, and the pipe through which the acid is added must dip below the surface of the aniline. The manufacture is best carried out in stoneware or enamelled iron vessels with an agitator of the same material, as if timber is used the product has a yellow colour. After cooling, the salt is filtered off, whizzed in a vulcanite-lined hydro extractor and then dried at 50° C. on lead or enamelled trays. The liquors are used for making the next charge of aniline. M.p. 192° C.

Toluidine.—The ortho and para isomers are the only ones of any technical importance, and they are manufactured from the corresponding nitrotoluols by methods exactly similar to those used for aniline, but as the para isomer solidifies at 40° C. warm water must be used for the condensers. "Toluidine mixture" is made by the reduction of "M.N.T. mixture," and consists chiefly of o- and p-toluidine.

o-Toluidine .. m.p. below —20° C., b.p. 197° C., sp.gr.1003 p-Toluidine .. m.p. 45° C., b.p. 198° C., sp.gr. 1046

**Xylidine.**—Xylidine is obtained by the reduction of crude nitroxylol and is a complex mixture of five or more isomers, of which 4-aminoxylol is the chief component. The isomers are troublesome to separate, although several methods have been described.<sup>4</sup>

m-Nitraniline.—By carrying out the process under suitable conditions m-dinitrobenzole can be reduced to m-nitraniline by means of iron and hydrochloric acid, only about I per cent. of diamine being formed at the same time.<sup>5</sup> The process, however, is a troublesome one, and much better results are obtained by the use of sodium polysulphide, the reduction being carried out as follows:—

Four kilos of flowers of sulphur are dissolved in 15 kilos

of crystallized sodium sulphide and 65 litres of water by boiling, and 10 kilos of powdered *m*-dinitrobenzole added slowly. Much heat is evolved and the addition should be regulated so as to keep the whole boiling. Boiling is then continued for half an hour, precipitated sulphur removed by filtration, and the liquor allowed to cool. The *m*-nitraniline crystallizes out in the pure state, and the yield is over 80 per cent. of theory. M.p. 112° C.; b.p. 285° C.

p-Nitraniline.—This is always obtained by the nitration of acetanilide (page 22), although its manufacture from p-nitrochlorbenzole and ammonia has been patented.

m-Phenylenediamine.—This is obtained by reducing m-dinitrobenzole with iron and hydrochloric or acetic acid, the process being carried out as follows:—

Two hundred litres of water and 200 kilos of m-dinitrobenzole are heated to boiling by blowing in live steam. Sixteen kilos of hydrochloric acid are then added and iron borings fed in slowly. About 450 kilos of iron will be required, and it must be added at such a rate that a brisk but not too violent reaction is maintained. If the reaction becomes too vigorous ammonia will be lost, and if it stops it may start again with explosive violence. It is best followed by watching the reflux condenser. Reduction is complete when a sample dropped into filter paper leaves no yellow stain. The charge is then made alkaline and extracted several times with boiling water, the latter extracts from one charge being used for extracting the next charge. Factories preparing their own intermediates merely bring the solution thus obtained to standard strength and use it without isolating the base in the solid state. however, the base is for sale the solution is concentrated either in lead-lined pans or in a multiple-effect evaporator, and the base then thrown out as the hydrochloride by adding excess of hydrochloric acid, or evaporation is taken further until a paste is obtained, the base being sold in this form. This paste, which is the usual commercial form, is almost If the pure base is desired it is readily obtained by distilling the paste in vacuo or in a current of carbon

dioxide. The water passes over first and then the almost pure base. M.p. 63° C.; b.p. 287° C.

p-Phenylenediamine.—There are two processes in use for manufacturing this base, by one of which it is obtained by the reduction of p-nitraniline and by the other by the reduction of aminoazobenzene.

The reduction of p-nitraniline is carried out as follows:—
The pan is charged with 200 kilos of iron borings and 200 litres of water, and after heating to boiling, 9 litres of muriatic acid (28 per cent.) are run in. The p-nitraniline (200 kilos) is then fed in slowly, the vigorous reaction that sets in after each addition being allowed to subside before the next addition is made. When the whole has been added, another 14 litres of muriatic acid is run in and the reduction continued until a sample gives a colourless spot on paper. The charge is then made faintly alkaline, boiled up, and then decanted off through a filter. On concentration the free base is obtained.

The aminoazobenzole process is probably somewhat more economical, and is carried out as follows:—

Aniline salt (130 kilos) is dissolved in 500 kilos of aniline and at a temperature of 25–30° C. a concentrated aqueous solution of 65 kilos of sodium nitrite run in slowly. After heating for two hours at 40° C. the whole is allowed to stand overnight in order to complete the formation of aminoazobenzole. This can be isolated by adding excess of hydrochloric acid at a temperature not exceeding 70° C. and then cooling, when the hydrochloride crystallizes out.

For the purpose of manufacturing phenylenediamine this is not done, the whole charge being pumped into a reduction pot surrounded with a steam jacket and previously charged with 100 kilos of iron borings, a little water and 3 litres of 28 per cent. muriatic acid. Reduction is carried out at 30–40° C. and takes about 12 hours. When colourless, the charge is boiled up, the aniline blown off with steam, and the solution decanted through a filter and concentrated. M.p. 147° C.; b.p. 267° C.

Monomethyl Aniline.—This is prepared by heating

methyl alcohol with aniline hydrochloride or with aniline and sulphuric acid in an autoclave at 200° C. As high pressures are attained (25–30 atmospheres) the size of the autoclaves is limited. They are best provided with an enamelled iron lining as lead-lined autoclaves cannot be considered as safe.

When sulphuric acid is used the proportions are 70 parts aniline, 42 parts methyl alcohol free from acetone, and 8 parts of R.O.V. The heating is carried out at 200° C. When the hydrochloride process is used the proportions are 55 parts aniline salt and 16 parts methyl alcohol. The temperature is raised to 180° C. for 3 hours during which time the pressure increases from 5 to 25 atmospheres. The pressure is released, and the heating continued for another 8 hours, after which the whole is made alkaline and the methyl aniline blown over with steam.

Methyl aniline can also be obtained by condensing aniline with formaldehyde and then reducing the azomethine compound with zinc dust and caustic soda, or the two steps can be carried on simultaneously. A third process consists in heating aniline and methyl alcohol at 220° C. in the presence of iodine. B.p. 192° C.; sp.gr. 976.

Dimethylaniline. 10—This is obtained in much the same way as monomethyl aniline, i.e. by heating aniline hydrochloride or sulphate with methyl alcohol in autoclaves fitted with enamelled iron liners. If sulphuric acid is used the charges are 80 kilos of aniline, 78 kilos of methyl alcohol, and 8 kilos of R.O.V. The heating is carried out at 230° C., and requires about 10 hours. The pressure goes up to 30-35 atmospheres. In the hydrochloride process 100 kilos of aniline salt and 80 kilos of methyl alcohol is the usual charge, heating being carried out as before. After cooling, the pressure is released and the gases led through a condenser and water scrubber to recover the excess of methyl alcohol, the charge then blown over into a still, neutralized and distilled with steam. Methyl alcohol passes over first and then the dimethyl aniline. The yield is over 90 per cent, of theory.

To avoid the high pressure attained in the above process, the methylation is sometimes carried out with methyl chloride as follows: 11—

Aniline (50 kilos) is well agitated in an autoclave with milk of lime made from 40 kilos of quicklime and 75 litres of water. The whole is heated to 100° C. and methyl chloride pumped in at 5-6 atmospheres pressure. About 62 kilos of methyl chloride are required, and the time taken is about 3 hours. The charge is then distilled with steam. A third process <sup>12</sup> consists in heating aniline with methyl alcohol and iodine at 230° C. for 7 hours. B.p. 192° C.; sp.gr. 960.

Mono- and Di-Ethylaniline.—These are obtained by processes exactly similar to those employed for the corresponding methyl derivatives, except that only the hydrochloride process can be used.

Monoethylaniline .. b.p. 206° C., sp.gr. 954. Diethylaniline .. m.p. 38° C., b.p. 216° C., sp.gr. 939.

m-Toluylenediamine.—This is made by the reduction of dinitrotoluol with iron and hydrochloric acid. M.p. 99°C.; b.p. 280°C. The melting-point of the commercial article depends largely on the melting-point of the dinitrotoluol used in its manufacture.

o-Aminophenol.<sup>13</sup>—This is obtained from the corresponding nitro-compound by reduction. The reduction is best brought about by adding sodium hydrosulphite to the boiling aqueous alkaline solution until colourless, the aminophenol crystallizing out on cooling, but can also be brought about by sodium sulphide in alkaline solution. M.p. 170° C.

p-Aminophenol. 14—This is obtained by the reduction of p-nitrophenol by sodium sulphide and caustic soda, by iron and hydrochloric acid or by sodium hydrosulphite in alkaline solution. Curiously enough it can also be obtained by the simultaneous oxidation and reduction of nitrobenzole, this being one of the few cases in which a hydroxyl group can be inserted directly into the benzene ring. The reaction is brought about electrically 15 or by treating nitrobenzole with zinc dust and concentrated sulphuric acid at 80° C. 16

Aminosalicylic Acid. 17—When salicylic acid is suspended in concentrated sulphuric acid (3 parts) and nitrated at 0–10° C. by the addition of a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acid, 2-0xy-5-nitrobenzoic acid is formed almost exclusively. This is filtered off from the waste acid and reduced with iron in the usual way. Aminosalicylic acid can also be obtained by the simultaneous oxidation and reduction of m-nitrobenzoic acid by treating it with concentrated sulphuric acid and zinc dust at 50–60° C.

Diaminostilbenedisulphonic Acid. <sup>18</sup>—When p-nitrotoluol is sulphonated by heating with 3–4 parts of 20 per cent. oleum the sulphonic acid group enters the ortho position to the methyl group. The sulphonic acid is very easily isolated by salting out, and if boiled with caustic soda and then reduced, yields diaminostilbenedisulphonic acid. A better process, however, is to oxidize with sodium hypochlorite and then reduce the dinitrostilbenedisulphonic acid thus formed. The oxidation is carried out by dissolving 24 kilos of p-nitrotoluolsulphonic acid in 8 parts of water at 80°C., and then at this temperature adding 70 litres of hypochlorite solution containing 150 grams of active chlorine and 30 grams of caustic soda per litre. After cooling the oxidation product is filtered off and reduced by ferrous sulphate and ammonia.

a-Naphthylamine.—This is manufactured from a-nitronaphthalene in the same way that aniline is made from
nitrobenzole, but the reduction must be carried out at a
lower temperature, as otherwise there will be heavy losses
caused through over-reduction with loss of ammonia. The
process is carried out as follows: The reducing vessel is
charged with 2000 lbs. of iron borings, 10 gallons of muriatic
acid of 25 per cent. strength and a little water. Steam is
blown in to raise the temperature to 50° C., and then 1500 lbs.
of crude, air-dried nitronaphthalene fed in little by little so
that a temperature of 50° C. is maintained. After the whole
has been added the charge is digested at the same temperature over night, and then neutralized with milk of lime and
the naphthylamine distilled off with superheated steam.

As it is not very volatile with steam this is best done by running the charge on to shallow iron trays arranged in a stove and then blowing in strongly superheated steam. As naphthylamine sets readily, warm water must be used for the condensers. The almost black product thus obtained is purified by distillation in vacuo. M.p. 51° C.; b.p. 300° C.

β-Naphthylamine.19—This can only be obtained from β-naphthol by heating with ammonia. In the older process the manufacture was carried out by heating 10 parts of  $\beta$ -naphthol with 8 parts of 25 per cent. ammonia for 24 hours at 200° C., the product being then washed with caustic to remove unchanged naphthol and finally distilled under reduced pressure. Considerable quantities of dinaphthylamine are, however, always formed as a bye product, and although better results are obtained by employing zinc chloride ammonia or calcium chloride ammonia the process has now been replaced by one in which ammonium sulphite and ammonia are used. This is carried out by heating II4 parts of  $\beta$ -naphthol with II6 parts of ammonium sulphite, 500 parts of water, and 120 parts of 20 per cent. ammonia in an autoclave at 120-150° C. After cooling, the naphthylamine is filtered off and washed with a little caustic soda. If the process has been carried out at a temperature not exceeding 150° C. the product is practically free from dinaphthylamine, but at higher temperatures In this case the crude naphthylamine is this is formed. dissolved in acid, the dinaphthylamine removed by filtration and the free base then precipitated with soda. M.p. 112° C.: b.p. 294° C.

The sulphite process <sup>20</sup> has the great advantage that less secondary amine is formed, and that the reaction takes place at a much lower temperature, and consequently the pressures attained are not so great. It is reversible and can be used for converting amino groups into hydroxyl groups or vice versâ, and also can be employed for making secondary or tertiary aliphatic amines or secondary aromatic amines from phenols or primary amino compounds. It is more applicable to the naphthalene series than to the

defined exceptions of which the following are the most important :-

No α-naphthol derivatives in which a sulphonic acid group is present in the ortho or meta position, i.e. at 2 or 3, will react.

No β-naphthol derivative in which a sulphonic acid group is present in the meta position, i.e. at 4, will react.

Aliphatic amines behave in the same way as ammonia, but aromatic amines present some exceptions, and a-naphthyl arylamines cannot be obtained by this process.

Thus although a sulphite ester can be very readily obtained from 1-naphthol-4-sulphonic acid or 1-naphthylamine-4-sulphonic acid and will react with ammonia or methylamine, it will not react with aniline or any other aromatic amine. On the other hand, the sulphite esters obtained from  $\beta$ -naphthol or  $\beta$ -naphthylamine derivatives react normally with ammonia or aliphatic or aromatic amines, except when there is a sulphonic group at 4.

Brönner's Acid 21 (2-naphthylamine-6-sulphonic acid). -This can be obtained by heating the corresponding 2naphthol-6-sulphonic acid with aqueous ammonia at 180° C. or in the presence of ammonium sulphite at 120° C.

F-Acid 22 (2-naphthylamine-7-sulphonic acid).—Obtained by heating 2-naphthol 7-sulphonic acid with two parts of 20 per cent. ammonia at 250° C. for 6 hours, or at a lower temperature by the sulphite process.

Amino G-Acid 28 (2-naphthylamine 6-8-disulphonic acid).—Obtained by passing ammonia gas over G-salt at 200-250° C. or by the sulphite process.

Amino R - Acid 24 (2-naphthylamine-3-6-disulphonic acid).-Obtained from R-salt by heating in a current of ammonia gas at atmospheric pressure at 200-250° C., or with aqueous ammonia in autoclaves at the same temperature. Better yields are obtained, however, by the sulphite process.

Aminonaphthol-R-Acid 25 (I-2-aminonaphthol-6-sulphonic acid).—This is obtained from β-naphthol-6-sulphonic acid by dissolving in ice-cold dilute hydrochloric acid and

then slowly adding a solution of sodium nitrite. The nitrosonaphthol sulphonic acid thus formed is not isolated, the solution being at once reduced with iron. After precipitating the iron with alkali the amino acid is salted out.

When a nitro compound is reduced in alkaline solution the reduction takes a somewhat different course. Under these circumstances the first compound produced is an azoxy compound, Ar—N—H—Ar, which on further reduc-

tion passes into an azo compound, Ar—N=N—Ar, and finally into a hydrazo compound, ArNH—NHAr. Of these the azoxy compounds are of little or no technical value, and the important azo-dyes are invariably prepared by a different method (Part II., Section III.). The hydrazo compounds, however, are of the greatest importance owing to the peculiar rearrangement they undergo under the influence of acids. These cause a molecular rearrangement with the production of a diamino diphenyl derivative.

If both para positions to the hydrazo group are free, a  $p_2$ -diaminodiphenyl is produced. If both are occupied an  $o_2$ -diaminodiphenyl is obtained; but it is only the para compounds (benzidines) that are of technical importance. Under some conditions the rearrangement does not go so far, an aminodiphenylamine being the product (semidine change); but these are of little value technically, and the manufacturer's object is always to produce the benzidine compound.

The reduction is almost invariably carried out in aqueous alcoholic solution with caustic soda and zinc dust, only a small quantity of caustic being used, as it acts more or less as a catalyst—

$$2ArNO_2+5Zn+H_2O=ArNH-NHAr+5ZnO$$

When the reduction is complete, i.e. when the solution has become colourless, the alcohol is blown off with steam and the mass of zinc oxide and hydrozo compound thrown on to a 60-mesh sieve and thoroughly washed with water.

The zinc oxide passes through the screen, but the crystalline hydrazo compound is retained. The rearrangement is carried out at 35° C. by slowly adding hydrochloric acid so that an acid reaction is maintained, and then boiling for a few minutes. The reduction can be brought about without alcohol if a large excess of caustic is used and the agitation is sufficiently vigorous to maintain an emulsion; but the yields are not so good, as aniline is produced simultaneously. Also the reaction is very violent and is easier to keep under control in aqueous alcoholic solution.

The use of iron and caustic soda <sup>26</sup> has been advocated and claims made that excellent yields are obtained, and that the caustic can be recovered as the ferrite produced is decomposed on dilution into ferric oxide and caustic soda, but other investigators assert that the presence of iron, even the walls of iron vessels, greatly enhance the production of aniline.<sup>27</sup> Reduction by electrical means has also been described and with zinc dust at its present high price would probably be economically sound.<sup>28</sup>

Benzidine <sup>29</sup> (p-diaminodiphenyl).—Reduction is best carried out in a stoneware or iron vessel (preferably enamelled) provided with an agitator, reflux condenser, and suitable charging holes, and which can be heated or cooled by means of a jacket. The charge is worked as follows:—

The pan is charged with 200 kilos of nitrobenzole, 100 litres of spirit, 200 litres of water, and 600 litres of caustic soda solution of 35 per cent. strength, and the whole brought to the boil. Zinc dust is now fed in slowly so as to keep the charge boiling, the amount required depending on the quality but usually being about 350 kilos. This takes about 3 hours, at the end of which time the charge should be colourless. If not, a little water, and if necessary some more zinc is added. When reduction is complete the alcohol is blown off with steam and recovered, and the charge then run on to a 60-mesh vibrating screen and thoroughly washed in a stream of water. When all the zinc oxide has been washed away the crystalline hydrazo benzene is suspended in twice its weight of water at 35°C. and a slow

manufacture, but the only satisfactory one is by the rearrangement of phthalimide or phthaliminic acid—

CO CONa COONa 
$$C_6H_4$$
 NH+3NaOH+NaOCl= $C_6H_4$  NH2  $CO$  +NaCl  $CO$  +Na2CO<sub>3</sub>+H<sub>2</sub>O

In order to obtain good yields the amount of caustic soda used must not be less than that shown by the equation, and the amount of hypochlorite must be exact. The process is carried out as follows:—

Phthalic acid is neutralized with ammonia, the solution evaporated to dryness and the residual ammonium phthalate heated to 225° C. The salt melts and water and ammonia are given off. When no more ammonia is evolved the melt is run into flat trays, allowed to cool, and then broken up and recrystallized from water in order to get rid of unchanged ammonium phthalate. One part of the phthalimide thus obtained, after being finely ground, is added simultaneously with 2 parts of solid caustic soda to 7 parts of water in a jacketed agitator pan, water being run through the jacket to prevent any undue rise in temperature. After cooling to parts of sodium hypochlorite solution (electrobleach), containing exactly 5.06 per cent. of NaOCI, are added, when the temperature rises automatically to 50-60°. To complete the change the solution is heated to 80°C. for half an hour and then cooled and free alkali neutralized with hydrochloric or sulphuric acid. adding excess of acetic acid the majority of the anthranilic acid is precipitated. It is filtered off and what remains in solution thrown down as the difficultly soluble copper salt. M.p. 145° C.

 $\alpha$ -Aminoanthraquinone.<sup>33</sup>—This can be obtained by heating potassium anthraquinone- $\alpha$ -sulphonate with ammonia under pressure, but is more readily obtained by adding  $\alpha$ -nitroanthraquinone to a boiling solution of two parts of sodium sulphide. The amino compound separates

والمستراء والمستراء والمستراء والمستراء

out as a dark red powder which after filtering from the red or purple-coloured liquor and washing is almost pure. M.p. 243° C.

The 1-5- and 1-8-diamino compounds are obtained in the same way from the corresponding compounds, but are better obtained from the corresponding disulphonic acids by heating with ammonia.

β-Aminoanthraquinone. 34—This is obtained by heating sodium anthraquinone—β-sulphonate (silver salt) with ammonia, but poor yields are obtained unless some substance is added to destroy the sulphite formed. This can be done by the addition of barium chloride, but better results are obtained by adding a suitable oxidizing agent such as manganese dioxide (Weldon mud) or sodium dichromate. Almost theoretical yields are obtained by heating 125 parts of silver salt, 156 parts of manganese dioxide (80 per cent. MnO<sub>2</sub>), 130 parts of water, and 580 parts of 25 per cent. ammonia at 200° C. for six hours. After cooling, the product is freed from manganese by treatment with sulphurous acid. M.p. 302° C.

2-6- and 2-7-diaminoanthraquinone are obtained in the same way from the corresponding disulphonic acids.

## REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

```
1 D.R.P. 116,942; 117,007; 127,815; 130,742; 131,404.
2 D.R.P. 114,809.
3 D.R.P. 139,457.
4 D.R.P. 39,947; 87,615, 71,976.
5 D.R.P. 67,018.
6 Ch. Ztg., 87, 229.
7 D.R.P. 148,749.
8 D.R.P. 75,854; E.P. 102816, 103416
9 D.R.P. 212,506.
10 Ch. Ztg., 34, 641, 667, 681, 690.
11 Rsv. prod. Chim., 1917, 20, 68.
12 D.R.P. 250,236.
13 D.R.P. 250,236.
14 Bl. [3], 11, 1043, Z. ang., 1897, 172. B., 15, 3037; 89, 3495.
D.R.P. 82,426, 95,755.
15 Elbs, "Electrolytic Preparations," p. 80.
16 D.R.P. 96,853.
17 B., 29, 3239.
18 D.R.P. 106,961; E.P. 535127.
```

A CARLES DE LA SANCE CARE

19 D.R.P. 117,471.

```
28 J. pr. [2], 69, 49, 70, 345; 71, 433; 75, 249; 77, 403; 79, 369; 80, 201. D.R.P. 109,102; 114,974; 115,335; 117,471; 121,683; 122,570, 126,136.

21 D.R.P. 22,547

22 D.R.P. 43,740.

23 D.R.P. 27,370.

24 D.R.P. 27,370.

25 Soc., 39, 47

28 D.R.P. 138,496.

27 Z. ang, 1893, 163.

28 Z. ph. ch., 34, 660. B., 83, 2329 D.R.P. 116,474; 122,046.

29 Z. ang, 1893, 67, 163. B., 38, 2329. D.R.P. 116,474; 122,046; 172,569. F.P. 458,033.

30 D.R.P. 241,853.

31 Z., 1886, 235.

32 D.R.P. 55,988.

33 D.R.P. 175,024; 181,722.

34 B., 12, 1567. D.R.P. 256,515; 267,212.
```

The electrolytic reduction of nitro compounds is discussed by Brand in "Elektrochemische Reduktion organischen Nitroköpfer," 1908.

is done, but its high viscosity and low specific heat are disadvantages.

In many cases when volatile compounds are to be sulphonated, the sulphonation is carried out in closed vessels (autoclaves) under pressure in order to maintain a sufficient temperature to allow sulphonation to be completed without use of excessive amounts of acid. These should never be heated by steam coils, as should one burst the steam blowing into the hot acid may cause such pressure that the autoclave explodes. Direct fire or vitriol are the best means of heating under these circumstances, but a water or brine bath can be used when temperatures of about 100° C. only are required.

When sulphonation is complete, the contents of the kettle are run out from a bottom cock where this is provided, or alternatively are blown out by compressed air when it is not, the charge drowned in water or crushed ice contained in large vats constructed of oak or pitchpine which may or may not be lead lined. If the sulphonic acid is insoluble in acid it is then merely necessary to filter it off. If soluble it is either salted out by the addition of common salt or the solution is neutralized with milk of lime, the precipitated gypsum filtered off and well washed, and the solution of the calcium salt then treated with an equivalent of sodium carbonate. This precipitates the calcium as carbonate, and after this has been removed by filtration the liquor is concentrated until the sodium salt of the sulphonic acid crystallizes.

It does not pay to substitute chalk for the rather more expensive lime, as the resulting frothing is very trouble-some. As sulphonation always takes place with the formation of water the sulphonating acid becomes more and more dilute as the reaction proceeds; until finally such a point is reached that it no longer acts. To remedy this either a very large excess of acid must be employed or oleum is substituted for the ordinary acid. If too strong an acid is used, polysulphonic acids may result; but this can be prevented either by keeping the temperature down at first

### Benzene Series.

Benzene Sulphonic Acid.—The sulphonation can be carried out with R.O.V. in open vessels provided with a reflux condenser, but under these circumstances a very great excess of acid must be used. More satisfactory results are obtained by sulphonating in closed autoclaves, e.g. by heating benzole with 5 times its weight of R.O.V. to 100° C. for about two days. The usual modern process, however, involves the use of oleum, the benzole being slowly added to about 4 times its weight of fuming acid containing 8 per cent. of free anhydride. A great deal of heat is evolved, and at first the temperature should not be allowed to exceed 30° C. After the acid has become somewhat diluted the temperature is raised to 50° C. and maintained at this point until sulphonation is complete, i.e. until the whole of the benzole is dissolved. A stronger oleum can be used, but if this is done there is danger of formation of disulphonic acid and sulphone, Ph-SO<sub>2</sub>-Ph. When sulphonation is complete the charge is usually run into water and limed out, but the acid can be salted out. The optimum conditions for salting out are to run 5 volumes of the charge into 9 volumes of brine.4 The free acid is not prepared commercially, as it is troublesome to isolate, and the sodium salt is more suited for phenol manufacture.

Benzene Disulphonic Acid.—More vigorous sulphonation of benzole leads to a mixture of meta and para disulphonic acids, low temperature favouring the formation of the former, and high temperature and prolonged cooking favouring the latter. The presence of mercury salts also favours the formation of the para acid. Technically no attempt is made to separate the acids, as they both pass into resorcinol on fusion with caustic.

The sulphonation is carried out with 8-10 per cent. oleum exactly as in the case of the mono acid, but the solution of the benzole is completed by slowly raising the temperature to 100° C. After solution is complete the charge is cooked for two hours at 275° C., cooled, run into

water, and limed out. A lower temperature, viz. 225° C., suffices if anhydrous sodium sulphate is added to the acid in the proportion of 1.1 parts of sulphate to 1 part of benzole.

As is the case with the mono acid, only the sodium salt

is prepared.

Toluol Sulphonic Acids.—Toluol on sulphonation gives a mixture of all three sulphonic acids, of which the meta derivative is present only in very small quantities and is of no technical value.

Sulphonation with sulphuric acid or oleum leads to about 60 per cent. of para acid, the sulphonation being carried out by heating to 100°C. with 6 parts of R.O.V. A better procedure, however, is to add simultaneously 184 kilos of toluol and 240 kilos of 25 per cent. oleum to 400 kilos of R.O.V., the temperature being maintained at 14-16° C. If, on the other hand, the sulphonation is carried out with chlorsulphonic acid, the ortho acid predominates, about 60 per cent. being formed. By employing sufficient chlorsulphonic acid the sulphochlorides are obtained direct and can be readily separated. This is the process usually employed in saccharine works, and is carried out by adding toluol slowly to 4 parts of chlorsulphonic acid, the temperature being kept below 5° C. After the whole of the toluol has been added the melt is stirred for 12 hours, run on to ice, and the sulphochlorides then collected.

Several methods have been proposed for separating the isomers, of which the following are the most important.—

(a) Separation by sulphuric acid. This separation is based on the fact that whereas the ortho acid is easily soluble in sulphuric acid of 65-70 per cent. strength, the para acid is difficultly soluble. On the other hand, the ortho acid is almost insoluble in sulphuric acid of 45-50 per cent. strength at low temperatures. The separation can be carried out by treating the mixed sodium salts with 4 parts of 66 per cent. sulphuric acid, but is best combined with the sulphonation process. If this is carried out with oleum, as described above, and then 140 kilos of water or ice added slowly so that the temperature does not rise

above 20° C., about 95 per cent. of the para acid separates in the oure state. By adding another 5 kilos of water and cooling to 10° C. a further small crop can be obtained consisting chiefly of the para acid, but contaminated with ortho. The filtrate is then diluted with 145 kilos of water and maintained at  $-5^{\circ}$  C. for two days, when the whole of the ortho acid separates out pure. The mother liquor from this is sulphuric acid of 45 per cent. strength, and can be concentrated or used for sulphate of ammonia or other The crystals of sulphonic acid which separate contain sulphuric acid of crystallization, and have the formula 2C<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>SO<sub>8</sub>H+H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>+H<sub>2</sub>O. They are dissolved in water and the solution limed out in the usual way.

(b) Separation of the sulphochlorides. These are either obtained by the direct method, i.e. by sulphonating with excess of chlorsulphonic acid, or by treating the mixed sodium salts with phosphorus trichloride or the magnesium salts with chlorsulphonic acid.7 On cooling, the mixed chlorides to -20° the para isomer (m.p. 69° C.) separates out.

Other methods of separation, such as fractional crystallization of the salts and fractional precipitation of the sulphamides have been proposed, but are not in general use.

Sulphanilic Acid (p-aminobenzenesulphonic acid).—As the free acid is almost insoluble in cold water its isolation is verv easy.

The sulphonation can be carried out by two methods, that employing excess of sulphuric acid being the least economical, but being still used in some of the smaller works whose output is not sufficient to justify expenditure on the special plant required by the baking process. In this case the aniline is added to twice its weight of vitriol and the charge then cooked at 180-190° until a sample is completely soluble in dilute caustic.

A more economical process consists in first converting the aniline into its acid sulphate. This can be done by adding the aniline slowly to the calculated amount of strong vitriol (100 parts of aniline require about 115 parts of R.O.V.), which must be done slowly as much heat is

is carried out at 25-30°C. with 3 parts of 23 per cent. oleum, until a sample is completely soluble in water. On running the melt into 15 parts of brine the acid separates.

m-Nitraniline-4-Sulphonic Acid.—This is obtained by treating *m*-dinitrobenzole with sodium sulphite solution, when simultaneous reduction and sulphonation takes place.8 The process is carried out by adding m-dinitrobenzole slowly to a warm 20 per cent. solution of sodium sulphite. As soon as the m-dinitrobenzole melts a brisk reaction sets in and a clear solution is obtained from which the sulphonic acid is precipitated on acidifying.

Phenylenediamine Sulphonic Acid.—m-Phenylene diamine-4-6-disulphonic acid is obtained by sulphonating m-phenylene diamine with oleum.9

b-Phenylene diamine sulphonic acid is obtained from p-phenylene diamine by oxidizing it to the quinone imide by bichromate and then treating this with bisulphite—

$$HN = C_6H_4 = NH + NaHSO_3 = NH_2C_6H_3 < SO_3Na$$

It is not necessary to isolate the quinone imide, the process being best carried out by oxidizing the diamine in the presence of sodium bisulphite.

b-Aminophenol Sulphonic Acid is obtained in a very similar way by passing sulphur dioxide into a warm suspension of 6.3 kilos of nitrosophenol in 50 litres of water. After complete solution has taken place the whole is boiled, and on subsequent cooling the aminophenol sulphonic acid separates out. Some disulphonic acid can be obtained from the mother liquors.

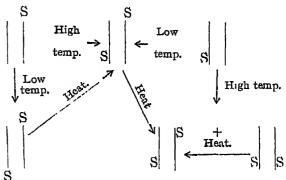
### NAPHTHALENE SULPHONIC ACIDS.

Owing to the enormous number of naphthalene, naphthol, naphthylamine, and aminonaphthol sulphonic acids that are of technical importance, no attempt can be made to treat them in detail. The manufacture of the more important ones will be described, but for the majority the reader must be referred to the literature (see pages 54, 55, 56).

When naphthalene itself is sulphonated the sulphonic

group enters the a-position at low temperatures and the  $\beta$ -position at high temperatures, and if the a-acid is heated with sulphuric acid the sulphonic acid group wanders to the  $\beta$ -position.

These two acids on further sulphonation give a variety of disulphonic acids according to the conditions under which the sulphonation is carried out, the second group again entering the  $\alpha$ -position at low temperatures and the  $\beta$ -position at high temperatures.



a-Naphthol on sulphonation gives a mixture of 1-2- and r-4-naphthol sulphonic acid, both of which on further sulphonation pass into 1-naphthol-2-4-disulphonic acid. The a-naphthol sulphonic acids, however, are not usually made by the sulphonation of a-naphthol.

β-Naphthol when sulphonated at a low temperature yields 2-naphthol-I-sulphonic acid which is converted by excess of sulphuric acid into a mixture of 2-naphthol-6-sulphonic acid (Schäffer's acid) and 2-naphthol-8-sulphonic acid (Bayer's or Crocein acid). The relative amounts of these isomers depends on the conditions. Excess of sulphuric acid, prolonged heating, and a high temperature all favouring the formation of Schäffer's acid.

More exhaustive sulphonation leads to 2-naphthol-3-6-disulphonic acid (R-acid) and 2-naphthol-6-8-disulphonic acid (G acid).

The products obtained by sulphonating a-naphthylamine depend very much on the conditions. By roasting

the sulphate, the 1-4 acid (naphthionic acid) is obtained, which prolonged heating with sulphuric acid converts into the I-5 acid (Laurent's acid) and the I-6 acid (Cleve's β- acid). Laurent's acid, however, is best obtained by sulphonating a-naphthylamine hydrochloride.

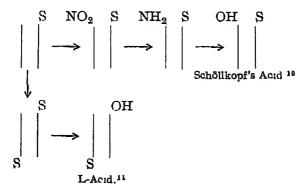
Another rearrangement takes place when sodium naphthionate is heated with naphthalene, the I-2 acid being produced.

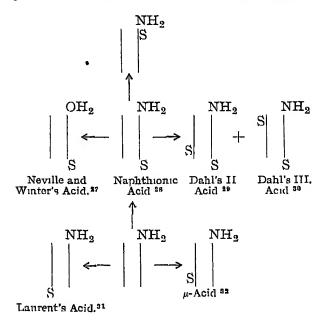
a-naphthylamine is first converted into acet-anaphthalide and then sulphonated, I-naphthylamine-5sulphonic acid is obtained.

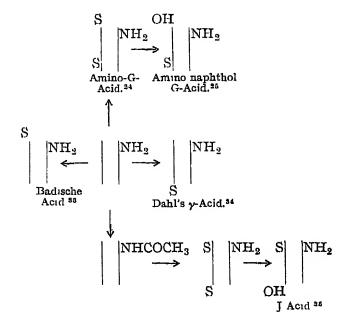
β-Naphthylamine on sulphonation yields four monosulphonic acids, viz. 2-8, 2-5, 2-6, and 2-7-naphthylamine sulphonic acid. The relative proportion in which these acids are formed depends on the conditions as regards time, temperature, and concentration, but the most important of them, viz. the 2-6 acid (Brönner's acid) and the 2-7 acid (amino F acid), are best obtained from the corresponding naphthol acids by heating with ammonia.

Finally, if  $acet-\beta$ -naphthalide is sulphonated the sulphonic acid group enters at 5 and 7, the most important product being the 5-7 disulphonic acid, which on fusion with caustic gives J-acid.

The following scheme indicates the method of formation of the chief technically important naphthol, naphthylamine and amino naphthol sulphonic acids together with their technical names :-







Hour I-3 ... Raised gradually to 160° C.
,, 3-6 .. Maintained at 160° C.
,, 7 ... Raised from 160-170° C.
,, 8 ... Maintained at 170° C.
,, 9 ... Raised from 170-180 C.
,, 10 ... Maintained at 180° C.

Total time 10 hrs.

During the last part of the cooking water and naphthalene distil off. When sulphonation is finished the melt is cooled, and then either run into salt solution or it is run into water and limed out in the ordinary way.

Naphthalene-I-5-disulphonic Acid.  $^{37}$ — This is obtained when naphthalene is dissolved in 5 parts of 23 per cent. oleum, the temperature being kept at about 10° C., or by adding I part of sodium naphthalene- $\alpha$ -sulphonate to 2 parts of oleum at 20° C. and then heating for an hour at 70° C. After dilution the acid is salted out.

Naphthalene-I-6-disulphonic Acid. 38—By the sulphonation of sodium naphthalene- $\beta$ -sulphonate with 2 parts of oleum at 100° C., or with 5 parts of R.O.V. at 110° C.

Naphthalene-2-6- and 2-7-disulphonic Acids.<sup>39</sup>—These are both obtained when sodium naphthalene- $\beta$ -sulphonate is treated with sulphuric acid at 170–180° C. and can be separated by means of their calcium salts. The 2-7 acid, however, is almost the sole product when the sulphonation is carried out in the presence of pyrosulphate.

Naphthalene-I-3-6-trisulphonic Acid.—By sulphonating with 8 parts of 24 per cent. oleum at 180° C., or with 6 parts of 40 per cent. oleum at 80° C. On nitration it gives I-nitronaphthalene-3-6-8-trisulphonic acid. The nitration is carried out at 30° C. by adding a slight excess of nitric acid dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid. The nitro acid is not isolated, the charge being run into water and then reduced to the amino acid with iron turnings. This latter is then isolated by liming out.

Naphthalene-1-3-5-trisulphonic Acid.—This is ob-

tained from the I-5-disulphonic acid by dissolving 2 parts of the sodium salt in 3 parts of monohydrate at 40° C. and then adding 2½ parts of 70 per cent. oleum. The melt is heated at 80–90° until a sample dissolved in water no longer gives a precipitate with brine. On nitration it gives I-nitronaphthalene-4-6-8-trisulphonic acid. The nitration is brought about by cooling the melt to 20° C. and at this temperature slowly adding the calculated amount of nitric acid dissolved in twice its weight of R.O.V. The nitro acid is not usually isolated, the melt being run into water and then reduced by adding iron turnings. The amino acid readily passes into the sultam—

Naphthalene-I-3-7-trisulphonic Acid.—The sodium salt of the 3-7-disulphonic acid is dissolved in 3 parts of monohydrate and I part of 60 per cent. oleum added. The melt is cooked at 100° C. until a sample gives no precipitate with brine. The acid is not isolated but nitrated by cooling the melt to 15-20° C. and then adding slowly the calculated amount of nitric acid. The nitro acid obtained is nitronaphthalene-3-5-7-trisulphonic acid. On reduction with iron it gives the corresponding amino acid.

Bayer's or Crocein Acid (2-naphthol-8-sulphonic acid). —This is obtained by the sulphonation of  $\beta$ -naphthol, whereby 2-naphthol-1-sulphonic acid is first formed but passes very readily into the 2-8- acid (Bayer's or Crocein acid) and the 2-6- acid (Schäffer's acid). Working details depend on whether it is desired to make Schäffer's acid as well as Bayer's acid or only the latter. If Bayer's acid only is desired the process is carried out as follows  $^{40}$ :—

Ten kilos of  $\beta$ -naphthol are slowly added to 20 kilos of R.O.V., great care being taken to prevent any rise of temperature taking place above 20° C. The naphthol dissolves,

but after a short time heat is evolved and the whole sets to a pasty mass owing to separation of 2-naphthol-1-sulphonic acid. Any tendency to heat up must be most carefully checked, as otherwise Schäffer's acid will be formed. The whole is then allowed to stand for about a week with frequent agitation while the transformation is taking place. The course of the reaction is followed by boiling a sample for some time with its own volume of water. As long as any 2-naphthol-1-sulphonic acid is present  $\beta$ -naphthol will be precipitated. When this is no longer the case the melt, which has become thinner, is run into water and limed out. If it is desired to obtain the acid completely free from Schäffer's acid, this is best done through the lead salts.

Schäffer's Acid <sup>41</sup> (2-naphthol-6-sulphonic acid).—This is obtained together with Bayer's acid by the sulphonation of  $\beta$ -naphthol with 2 parts of R.O.V. at 50–60° C. The melt is limed out in the ordinary way and the sodium salts obtained. These are treated with sufficient caustic soda to allow of salt formation taking place with the hydroxyl group and the disodium salts carefully dried and extracted with 4 parts of boiling 90 per cent. spirit. Bayer's salt dissolves, but Schäffer's salt remains insoluble.

Separation can also be brought about by fractional crystallization of the sodium, potassium, or calcium salts.

G-Acid <sup>23</sup> (2-naphthol-6-8-disulphonic acid).—By the sulphonation of  $\beta$ -naphthol with 4–5 parts of R.O.V. at 60° C. for 36–48 hours, or at 20° C. for 8 days. It is always accompanied by some R-acid and Bayer's acid, and can be purified through its sodium, potassium, or barium salt, or the impurities can be thrown out by fractional precipitation with a diazo chloride.

R-Acid <sup>18</sup> (2-naphthol-3-6-disulphonic acid).—The sulphonation is best carried out by adding β-naphthol quickly to 4 parts of R.O.V. previously heated to 125° C. and then cooking the charge for 6 hours at this temperature. It is separated from the G-acid formed simultaneously by salting out with brine, when R-salt is thrown down and G-acid remains in solution, or by extracting the sodium salts

its weight of 25 per cent. oleum at 5° C. The charge is then poured on to ice, and the acid collected and limed out. It is soluble in 1000 parts of cold water. It can also be obtained by sulphonating a-nitronaphthalene with chlorsulphonic acid and then reducing the nitro group.

 $\mu$ -Acid or Cleve's  $\beta$ -Acid <sup>32</sup> (1-naphthylamine-6-sulphonic acid).—α-Naphthylamine is sulphonated with 5 parts of R.O.V. at 125° C. for 22 hours. After liming out the calcium salts are taken to dryness and 1-5-acid extracted with boiling alcohol and then disulphonic acids with methyl alcohol. The free acid is soluble in 1000 parts of cold water.

Dahl's No. III. Acid <sup>30</sup> and Dahl's No. II. Acid <sup>20</sup> (r-naphthylamine-4-7- and 4-6-disulphonic acids).—These are obtained simultaneously when naphthionic acid is sulphonated, the product consisting of about two parts of No. III. and one part of No. II. The sulphonation is carried out with 3½ parts of 25 per cent. oleum and requires about 3 days. Sulphonation is complete when 5 or 6 drops of the melt in 10 c.c. of water gives no precipitate on standing for a few minutes. The whole is then limed out and the calcium salts taken to dryness and extracted with 85 per cent. spirit, when No. II. salt dissolves and No. III. is left.

Badische Acid  $^{33}$  (2-naphthylamine-8-sulphonic acid). —This is the chief product when  $\beta$ -naphthylamine is sulphonated. The sulphonation is best carried out by heating 200 lbs. of  $\beta$ -naphthylamine with 600 lbs. of R.O.V. for 6 hours at 100–110° C. After cooling the melt is run into 250 gallons of water and the crude acid filtered off and converted into the sodium salt. Impurities are then extracted by 6 parts of spirit.

2-Naphthylamine-5-7-disulphonic Acid.<sup>48</sup>—This is important as an intermediate product in the manufacture of J-acid, and is obtained by sulphonating acet- $\beta$ -naphthylamine and then splitting off the acetyl group. The sulphonation is best carried out by adding I part of  $\alpha$ -acet-naphthalide to 5 parts of 35 per cent. oleum, and at 5° C., and allowing the mixture to stand at 25–30° C. for 24 hours. A purer product is, however, obtained if I-naphthylamine-

One hundred pounds of anthraquinone and I lb. of mercury sulphate are heated at 160° C. with 200 lbs. of 45 per cent. oleum until a sample is completely soluble in water. After cooling the melt is diluted with 200 lbs. of R.O.V. and the 1-5- acid, which is insoluble in sulphuric acid, filtered off and well washed with R.O.V. The united filtrates on dilution with half their weight of water deposit the 1-8acid. Both acids are purified by dissolving in water and salting out with potassium chloride.

Anthraquinone-β-Sulphonic Acid. 45—The sulphonation is carried out by heating anthraquinone with its own weight of 45 per cent. oleum, and slowly raising the temperature to 160° C. Without cooling the melt is then run into boiling water and unchanged anthraquinone (20-25 per cent.) removed by filtration. The object of running the melt while still hot into boiling water is to obtain this anthraguinone in a filterable condition. The liquors are then neutralized with caustic and on cooling deposit sodium anthraquinone-B-sulphonate, known technically as "silver salt" from its silvery appearance. A further quantity is obtained by concentrating the mother liquors. If these are then concentrated to a gravity of 1260 they deposit most of the Glauber salt, and after this has been removed the filtrate can be taken to dryness and some disulphonates mixed with sodium sulphate obtained.

Anthraguinone Disulphonic Acids. 46-Further sulphonation of anthraquinone leads to a mixture of 2-6 and 2-7-disulphonic acids which can be separated by the fractional crystallization of their sodium salts. The sulphonation is carried out with 2-3 parts of oleum at 170° C. The same acids can be obtained from dichloranthracene.

### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> E.P. 101,973<sup>18</sup>; 103,204<sup>16</sup>.

<sup>\*</sup> D.R.P. 71,556.

\* D.R.P. 113,784.

\* Bl. [4], 9, 249, Am. Soc., 20, 549.

\* D.R.P. 8704, 98,030; 118,393; 176,227. B., 12, 1048.

\* D.R.P. 57,391.

```
<sup>7</sup> D.R.P. 35,211; 68,708; 79,234; 96,106, 142,116; 154,655. A.P.
        692,598.
    B., 29, 2448.
                      D.R.P. 86,097.
   D.R.P. 64,908; 78,834.
10
   D.R.P. 40,571; 74,644.
   D.R.P. 41,934; 77,446.
13
   D.R.P. 80,741.
13
   D.R.P. 62,368; 67,062; 69,722; 80,668.
14
   D.R P. 67,563; 68,721; 69,190; 75,153.
16
   D.R.P. 42,112; 45,221.
16
   D.R.P. 39,925, 41,505; 42,272; 42,273; 43,740.
17 D.R.P. 53,023
18 D.R.P. 33,916.
10 D.R.P. 27,378. B., 22, 398.
<sup>20</sup> D.R.P. 22,547.
<sup>21</sup> J. pr., 106, 449; A., 152, 296.

<sup>23</sup> D.R.P. 33,857.
D.R.P. 36,491.
D.R.P. 27,378.
<sup>35</sup> D.R.P. 53,076.
36
<sup>28</sup> Soc., 89, 47.

<sup>27</sup> D.R.P. 26,012; 46,307; 77,446.
<sup>28</sup> B., 13, 1948.
<sup>20</sup> D.R.P. 41,957.
30 D.R.P. 41,957.
   B., 7, 1367; 19, 578, 20, 2940, 3401. A., 275, 201. D.R.P.
32 B., 20, 74; 21, 2370. A., 275, 200. D.R.P. 7,291.
   D.R.P. 20,760; 29,084.
   D.R.P. 29,084; 32,271; 32,270.
35
   D.R.P. 14,154.
36
   D.R.P. 50,411.
37
   D.R.P. 45,229.
88 D.R.P. 45,229; 45,776.
                                   B , 22, 3328.
39
                                  B , 9, 592.
   D.R.P. 48,053; 61,730.
40 D.R.P. 33,857.
41 D.R.P. 30,077; 33,857. J. pr., 106, 449; D.R.P. 72,833.
48 D.R.P. 69,555

    B., 86, 4197; 87, 67. D.R.P. 149,801.
    A., 160, 132; B., 12, 189, 589.
    A., 158, 323; 160, 134. B., 12, 1288.
```

Sulphonation processes are treated by Wichelhaus in "Sulfurieren," 1911.

5

## SECTION IV.—HYDROXYLATION

ALTHOUGH methods have been described by which an hydrogen atom in an aromatic nucleus can be oxidized to an hydroxyl group these methods are as yet of no technical value except in the case of one or two anthraquinone derivatives. As the most important of these are dyestuffs they are discussed in Part II., Section XI.

Halogen atoms attached to the nucleus are usually so firmly bound that they cannot be replaced without complete rupture of the molecule. Nitro groups, however, in the ortho and para position render the halogen atom somewhat less stable, but even o- and p-nitrophenols are only obtained from the corresponding nitrochlorbenzoles with the utmost difficulty, prolonged heating with aqueous caustic potash under pressure being necessary, and even then the yields are minute. Alcoholic potash has been tried, but it reduces the nitro group with production of azoand azoxy-compounds.

When two nitro groups are present in the ortho and para positions the case is different, and under these circumstances the halogen atom is easily removed by boiling with sodium carbonate or lime in open vessels, or even by heating with water under pressure. The only compound of technical importance that is manufactured by this method is 2-4-dinitrophenol. This is obtained when 2-4-dinitro chlorbenzole is boiled with a 5 per cent. solution of sodium carbonate, the weight of carbonate used being the same as that of nitrochlorbenzole. The decomposition is complete in about 24 hours, the nitrophenol being then in solution as its sodium salt. On acidifying it separates out, and only requires to be washed and dried. It melts at 114° C.

As a rule hydroxyl groups are introduced by displacement of amino groups or sulphonic acid groups.

When an amino group is to be replaced, two methods are available, viz. the base is first diazotized and the diazo salt boiled with water, or the amino group is replaced directly by boiling with acids or alkalies, or with bisulphites, in this latter case a sulphite ester being formed as an intermediate product which on subsequent hydrolysis passes into the phenol:

 $\Lambda rNH_2 \rightarrow ArOSO_2 \rightarrow ArOH$ 

The diazo reaction is of very general application, but in very many cases the yields are microscopic. In other cases, however, almost quantitative yields are obtained. As the diazo sulphates usually give better yields than the diazo-chlorides the base can conveniently be diazotized with sulphuric acid and sodium nitrite instead of hydrochloric acid, and this has the great advantage that lead-lined vessels can be used for the subsequent boiling. When diazotization is complete, the decomposition of the diazo sulphate is brought about either by simple boiling up, or, as is more customary, by allowing the solution of the diazo salt to run slowly into boiling dilute sulphuric acid. As nitrogen gas is evolved allowance must be made for frothing.

The replacement of the amino group by hydroxyl by heating with acids or alkalies depends very largely on the base. In the benzene series amino groups as a rule are only replaced when there are negative substituents in the ortho or para position. Thus aniline gives little or no trace of phenol, whereas o- and p-nitraniline give the corresponding nitrophenols in fair yield. Diamines and aminophenols react more readily than monamines, and p-nitroso dialkyl anilines react with exceptional ease, nitroso dimethyl aniline, for example, being readily split into dimethylamine and nitrosophenol when boiled with 3 per cent. caustic soda under a reflux condenser. The nitrosophenol is readily reduced, so that this method provides a process for manufacturing

aminophenol, but it is usually found more economical to prepare nitrophenol and reduce this. It is used, however, in making aminophenol sulphonic acid (see p. 52).

In the naphthalene series amino groups are more readily replaced, especially when in the  $\alpha$ -position, and the method is widely used in preparing the important naphthol sulphonic acids.  $\alpha$ -Naphthol itself is manufactured by heating  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine salts with water under pressure, and the replacement is facilitated by the presence of sulphonic acid groups in the molecule. For this reason the  $\alpha$ -naphthol sulphonic acids are not manufactured by sulphonating  $\alpha$ -naphthol, but by sulphonating  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine and then replacing the amino group.

Although in some cases the replacement can be carried out in open vessels, better results are usually obtained by working under pressure, and although both acids and alkalies can be used to bring about the reaction the latter are usually to be preferred, owing to their less corroding effect on the plant. Hydrochloric acid can only be handled in autoclaves with an enamelled iron liner, but dilute sulphuric acid can be handled in lead-lined autoclaves provided the temperature is not too high. Acid hydrolysis allows of somewhat lower working pressures, as the ammonia evolved is absorbed; but this is usually more than counterbalanced by the corrosive properties of the liquors and by the danger of splitting off a sulphonic acid group, some of the sulphonic acids being easily hydrolysed.

The sulphite process frequently gives the best yields, but is not so generally applicable as acid or alkaline hydrolysis. It takes place at low temperatures, 90-110° C., so that open lead-lined vessels can be used, and as a rule it yields a product of exceptional purity. The sulphite ester is formed as an intermediate product, but not isolated, the hydrolysis being brought about by boiling the solution with caustic soda. The reaction is reversible and is much used for the production of amines. It is more fully discussed on page 36.

One of the most important methods of introducing a

broken up and dissolved in water. The sodium salts of some phenols, e.g. a-naphthol, are almost insoluble in caustic, so that on standing they rise to the surface, and in this case a considerable amount of caustic can be recovered by running off the lower layer separately. In any case the sodium salt of the phenol is decomposed by hydrochloric acid, or in suitable cases by carbonic acid, and the phenol then isolated by any suitable means. If mineral acid is used sulphurous acid is liberated, and either collected in caustic soda as sulphite or used to neutralize part of the next charge.

Phenol.—In normal times the supply of phenol from coal tar is sufficient to meet the world's demand, and it is only made synthetically when the price rises sufficiently. During the war, however, the demand for picric acid has been so great that hundreds of thousands of tons of phenol have been made from benzene sulphonic acid, although the phenol process is rapidly being displaced by the chlorbenzole process. The melt is carried out at 300° C., with 3 parts of caustic to 4 parts of sodium benzene sulphonate. the temperature being finally raised to 330° C. and maintained at this point until the whole goes to a thin liquid. After dissolving and neutralizing the melt, the phenol is collected and purified by distillation, The yield is about 90 per cent. M.p. 42° C., b.p. 182° C.

Cresol.—The cresols are usually obtained from coal tar, but the ortho and para isomers can be obtained from the corresponding toluol sulphonic acids, or in about 75 per cent. yield from o- and p-toluidine by the diazo reaction.

```
.. m.p. 31° C., b.p. 190° C.
o-Cresol
m-Cresol ..
                .. m.p. 4° C., b.p. 203° C.
                .. m.p. 35° C., b.p. 202° C.
φ-Cresol ..
```

Resorcinol (m-dioxybenzene).2—As all three benzene disulphonic acids pass into resorcinol on fusion with caustic there is no need to separate the isomers, and use is always made of the mixture of sodium benzene disulphonates obtained by sulphonating benzene.

- acid).—This acid is usually spoken of as NW acid, and there are three processes in use for its manufacture, of which the sulphite process is the best.
- (a) Sodium naphthionate (I part) is diazotized in the usual way with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid, and the insoluble diazo salt filtered off and washed. It is then mixed with ten parts of water and run slowly into 18 parts of boiling 41 per cent. sulphuric acid. On neutralizing and cooling the acid crystallizes out.
- (b) Equal weights of sodium naphthionate and 50 per cent. caustic soda are heated in an autoclave for 10 hours at 200-220° C. The product is then run into water, the ammonia boiled off and the solution neutralized.
- (c) Sodium naphthionate (32 kilos) is dissolved in 20 litres of water and 75 kilos of 40 per cent. sodium bisulphite solution, and the whole heated at 90° C. for 24 hours. After cooling hydrochloric acid is added until acid to congo paper and unchanged naphthionic acid (about 10 per cent.) filtered off. The filtrate is then made alkaline with caustic soda and boiled to hydrolyse the sulphite ester and remove ammonia. It is then acidified and boiled to remove sulphur dioxide and the NW acid finally salted out.

A modification of this process consists in dissolving naphthionate in 3 parts water and then passing sulphur dioxide at 100° C. for 30 hours.

L-Acid 5 (1-naphthol-5-sulphonic acid).—From naphthalene-I-5-disulphonic acid by fusing with 4 parts of caustic soda at 180° C. On acidifying the dissolved melt L-acid separates.

Schöllkopf's Acid (1-naphthol-8-sulphonic acid).-This is best obtained from the corresponding amino acid by heating with 4 parts of water at 200° C. for 8 hours. It can also be obtained by the diazo process.

Chromotropic Acid 7 (1-8-dioxynaphthalene-3-6-disulphonic acid).—This is obtained by two methods.

(a) H-acid is heated with 10 parts of 5 per cent. caustic soda solution in an autoclave at 265° C. for 8 hours. liberated ammonia is then boiled out and the solution neutralized when chromotropic acid separates or is salted out. H-acid is obtained from I-naphthylamine-3-6-8-trisulphonic acid, and when chromotropic acid is being made the H-acid is not isolated. Instead the melt is dissolved in water, diluted until the alkalinity is 5 per cent. and this solution then heated as above.

(b) 1-Naphthylamine-3-6-8-trisulphonic acid is diazotized with sulphuric acid and sodium nitrite in the usual way and the diazo solution boiled until no more nitrogen is evolved. From this solution the sodium salt of 1-naphthol-3-6-8-trisulphonic acid 8 is obtained by liming out, and is then heated with 3 parts of 50 per cent. caustic soda at 170-220° C. until no more frothing takes place. The melt is dissolved in water and acidified. On cooling the chromotropic acid separates.

Aminonaphthol G-Acid 9 (2-8-aminonaphthol-6-sulphonic acid).—This is obtained from amino G acid (2-naphthylamine-6-8-disulphonic acid) by heating it in an autoclave at 185° C. for 7 hours with twice its weight of 40 per cent. caustic soda. The acid is deposited from the cold melt on acidifying.

**J-Acid** <sup>10</sup> (2-amino-5-naphthol-7-sulphonic acid).—From  $\beta$ -naphthylamine-5-7-disulphonic acid by heating in an autoclave with twice its weight of 50 per cent. caustic at 180° C. The melt is then run on to ice and acidified with hydrochloric acid. On cooling the J-acid crystallizes.

H-Acid <sup>11</sup> (1-8-aminonaphthol-3-6-disulphonic acid).— From the sodium salt of 1-naphthylamine-3-6-8-trisulphonic acid by fusing with twice its weight of caustic soda (containing 10 per cent. of water) at 180° C.

**K-Acid** <sup>12</sup> (1-8-aminonaphthol-3-5-disulphonic acid).— By heating sodium α-naphthylamine-3-5-8-trisulphonate with double its weight of 75 per cent. caustic soda in an autoclave at 170° C.

**2R-Acid** <sup>18</sup> (2-8 aminonaphthol-3-6-disulphonic acid).— By caustic fusion of 2-aminonaphthalene-3-6-8-trisulphonic acid at 200–260° C.

2S-Acid 14 (1-8-aminonaphthol-2-4-disulphonic acid).—

ا من المنظم الم

From 1-naphthylamine 2-4-8-trisulphonic acid by fusing with caustic at 180-190° C.

### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

```
1 B., 7, 77.
2 Dingl., 263, 156.
3 D.R.P. 74,879; 76,595.
4 D.R.P. 46,307, 77,446; 109,102.
5 D.R.P. 41,934.
6 D.R.P. 74,644. B., 20, 3162; A., 247, 344.
7 D.R.P. 67,563; 68,721; 69,190; 75,153.
8 D.R.P. 56,058.
9 D.R.P. 53,076.
10 D.R.P. 75,469; E.P. 261483.
11 D.R.P. 69,722.
12 D.R.P. 80,741.
13 D.R.P. 53,023.
14 D.R.P. 80,668.
```

Some account of the caustic fusions will be found in Wichelhaus, "Sulfurienen, Alkalischmelze der Sulfosauren, Esterifizieren" Leipzig, 1911.

in passing chlorine into benzaldehyde. Much heat is evolved and the aldehyde boils, but towards the end heat must be applied. When the reaction is complete the product is distilled. B.p. 198°, sp.gr. 1212.

Chloranthraquinone CoH3Cl(CO)2CoH4.4-The monochloranthraquinones are best obtained from the corresponding sulphonic acids. The reaction is carried out by dissolving 40 parts of the sodium or potassium salt of the sulphonic acid in 1200 parts of water and 150 parts of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The solution is boiled under a reflux condenser and a solution of 40 parts of sodium chlorate in 200 parts of water run in slowly, when the chloranthraguinone separates out in the pure state.

a-Chloranthraquinone melts at 162° and β-chloranthraquinone at 210° C.

The dichloranthraquinones are obtained in exactly the same way from the disulphonic acids.

Benzaldehyde C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CHO.—Many methods have been proposed for manufacturing benzaldehyde by the direct oxidation 5 of toluol, but none have proved so satisfactory as the hydrolysis of benzal chloride:

# PhCHCl2+H2O=PhCHO-1-2HCl

This decomposition can be brought about by boiling with caustic soda or milk of lime, best under pressure, but the catalytic method is the best.6 This is based on the fact that hydrolysis is brought about by water at or below 100° C. if a little dry ferric benzoate or iron powder is added to the benzyl chloride. The addition of the ferric benzoate or iron powder must be made about half an hour before any water is added. The process is carried out as follows. Sixty kilos of benzal chloride is heated in a steam-jacketed enamelled iron kettle to 25-30° C. and 20 grams of iron powder added. After standing for half an hour 12 litres of water are run in and the whole heated slowly to 90-95° C. Hydrochloric acid gas is evolved, and the hydrolysis is complete in about 10 hours. The charge is then made alkaline with milk of lime and the benzaldehyde driven over with steam. If desired absolutely pure it is dissolved in bisulphite solution, separated from any insoluble matter and then liberated by adding sodium carbonate.

The hydrolysis of benzal chloride can be carried out more rapidly by adding 200 kilos of milk of lime (made from 34 kilos of lime) before the heating is started. Under these circumstances the mixture is heated with direct steam to 50° C., at which temperature the reaction sets in, the heat evolved being as a rule sufficient to complete it. The working costs are somewhat higher, as lime has to be used and the hydrochloric acid is lost; but considerable time is saved and the capital costs are smaller, as naked iron vessels can be used.

Benzaldehyde boils at 179° C.

Benzoic Acid C<sub>0</sub>H<sub>5</sub>COOH.—The alkaline residue left after the benzaldehyde has been blown off always contains benzoic acid derived from the benzotrichloride present in the benzal chloride, and on filtering and acidifying this is thrown down. If required in larger quantities it is merely necessary to use a crude benzal chloride of higher gravity, i.e. one containing more benzotrichloride. M.p. 121° C.

Salicylic Acid 7 (o-oxybenzoic acid).—This is obtained by the action of carbon dioxide on sodium phenolate, the carbonic ester at first formed undergoing a rearrangement:

PhO.COONa=
$$C_2H_2$$
 $<$ COONa

The phenol is dissolved in the calculated amount of caustic soda and the solution then rapidly evaporated in shallow iron pans heated by an oil bath. The solution must be taken to absolute dryness, and to prevent charring the pans should be heated by an oil bath and the contents kept in motion by revolving scrapers. The evaporation should be as rapid as possible, as otherwise the carbon dioxide in the air will decompose part of the phenolate. When thoroughly dry the salt is ground up, charged into autoclaves, and carbon dioxide pumped in. In some factories it is the custom to

cool the charge until no more carbon dioxide is absorbed. i.c. until the formation of the carbonic ester is complete; but it is more usual to maintain the temperature at 120-140° C.. so that the ester is rearranged as formed. In either case the phenolate must be absolutely dry, and in the form of a fine powder, and the autoclave should be provided with revolving arms so as to keep the phenolate turning over. When the change is complete the charge is dissolved in water, and saturated with carbon dioxide to liberate unchanged phenol, which is then removed by steam or by a suitable solvent. The salicylic acid is then precipitated with mineral acid, filtered off and washed and then usually purified by distillation in vacuo or by distillation with superheated steam. During the treatment of the sodium phenolate with carbon dioxide the temperature must not be allowed to rise much above 140° C., as if it does phenol is liberated and the product is also contaminated with p-oxybenzoic acid.

In some modern works the phenol and caustic are mixed in an iron pan fitted with a very efficient agitator and the solution taken to dryness in vacuo, heating being effected by superheated water circulating in channels cast in the walls of the kettle. The charge is then cooled below 100°C. by circulating cold water and carbon dioxide pumped in. the circulation of water being maintained so as to prevent undue rise in temperature. Very efficient agitation is required as otherwise the dry mass will adhere to the walls. This method of working is considerably quicker and in addition yields a purer product. The acid melts at 155° C.

Phthalic Acid 8 (benzene-o-dicarboxylic acid).—On the manufacturing scale this is invariably obtained by the oxidation of naphthalene by sulphuric acid in the presence of mercuric sulphate. The process is carried out as follows: One thousand pounds of naphthalene are dissolved by gently warming with 15,000 lbs. of sulphuric acid monohydrate and about 500 lbs. of mercuric sulphate in a cast-iron sulphonation kettle. The solution is then pumped into another cast-iron kettle of considerably larger size, which is provided with a condenser, and is arranged for heating by direct fire. The solution is heated slowly, and oxidation sets in at 200° C. and is brisk at 250° C. Torrents of carbon dioxide and sulphur dioxide are evolved, and these are led back to the contact chambers of the oleum plant, where the sulphur dioxide is reconverted into sulphuric acid. The phthalic acid condenses together with the water and sulphuric acid which distil off. The temperature of the still is carried up to 300–350° C. and the distillation continued almost to dryness. On cooling the distillate practically the whole of the phthalic acid separates out, and after wringing in a centrifuge merely requires to be washed with a little water. If desired it can be purified by sublimation. It consists almost entirely of the anhydride. M.p. 213° C.

p-Nitrosodimethyl Aniline ONC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>NMe<sub>2</sub>.—Dimethyl aniline (240 lbs.) is dissolved in 190 gallons of 17 per cent. hydrochloric acid contained in an oak or pitch pine vat provided with an agitator. Ice is then added until the temperature falls to 10° C., and then a solution of 208 lbs. of sodium nitrite in 80 gallons of water run in slowly through a lead pipe reaching well below the surface. During the addition crushed ice is added from time to time so that the temperature does not rise above 10° C. When the whole of the nitrite has been added the charge is allowed to stand for an hour or two and the nitrosodimethyl aniline hydrochloride then filtered off.

Michler's Ketone<sup>9</sup> (Tetramethyldiaminobenzophenone).—Phosgene is passed into dimethyl aniline contained in an enamelled iron autoclave until the increase in weight is 41 per cent. The autoclave is then closed, and the mixture of dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride and dimethyl aniline heated on the water-bath for 7 hours. Excess of dimethyl aniline is then blown off by steam, and the residue dissolved in hydrochloric acid and, after filtration, precipitated by soda. M.p. 179° C.

Anthraquinone 
$$C_6H_4$$
  $CO$   $C_6H_4$ .—This is invariably

obtained by oxidizing anthracene with sodium dichromate and sulphuric acid, and considerable care is required in selecting a suitable quality of anthracene although this point is not so important if it is first purified with pyridine. Some anthracene, especially that obtained from gasworks in which a mixture of ordinary coal and cannel coal is distilled, is rich in paraffin, and if such an anthracene is used for making anthraquinone endless trouble will be encountered through filters choking. Commercial anthracene usually runs about 45 per cent., and this can be oxidized to anthraquinone by using only the calculated amount of bichromate, as under these circumstances the impurities are left un-It is much better, however, to bring the crude affected. anthracene up to 95 per cent. by washing with pyridine. In any case the anthracene must be got into a suitable physical condition, as it is not very readily attacked by aqueous dichromate. This is best done by volatilizing it with steam superheated to 300° C. and then condensing by leading into a chamber with fine jets of water. The anthracene comes down as a sludge which is dewatered so as to

give a paste, but must not be dried. The oxidation is then carried out as follows: The anthracene paste is suspended in boiling water and kept well agitated while a solution of sodium bichromate containing 100 grams of bichromate and 250-300 grams of sulphuric acid per litre is slowly run in. The addition must not be too rapid or excessive frothing will take place. When oxidation is complete the anthraquinone is filtered off and washed. If the anthracene has been purified by washing with pyridine the anthraquinone will be pure enough without further treatment; but if made from crude anthracene it is usually necessary to heat it with 2-3 parts of concentrated sulphuric acid at 130° C. solution, without cooling, is then run into boiling water and the precipitated anthraquinone filtered off and wastled. It is necessary to run the hot acid solution into boiling water in order to get the anthraquinone into a form that can be filtered. The spent chrome liquors from the oxidation of anthracene are concentrated and the chrome regenerated electrically.11

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> D.R.P. 219,242.
<sup>2</sup> B., 18, 608; A., 272, 149.
<sup>3</sup> A., 8, 262; 70, 41; 106, 302; 109, 256. D.R.P. 210,805.
<sup>4</sup> A., 881, 2; B., 46, 2703. D.R.P. 205,195.
<sup>5</sup> D.R.P. 101,221; 127,388; 158,609; 175,295; 189,178.
<sup>6</sup> D.R.P. 82,927; 85,493.
<sup>7</sup> D.P. 20,220; 28,742; 73,270.

<sup>7</sup> D.R.P. 29,939; 38,742; 73,279.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> D R.P. 91,202.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> B., 9, 715, 1900.

 <sup>10</sup> B., 22, 330, 422, 580, 968, 1063. D.R.P. 35,790; 53,938.
 10 Mon. Sci. [3], 8, 421, 1759.
 11 D R.P. 103,860; 109,012; 117,949.

# PART II.—THE DYESTUFFS

## SECTION I.—THE NITROSO-DYES

In these the nitroso-group is the chromophore. They are of very minor importance and are, without exception, mordant colours. They are all nitroso-phenols and are obtained by the action of nitrous acid on the phenols. The nitroso-group enters the para-position if this is vacant, and the ortho-position if the para-position is occupied. The para-nitroso-phenols do not form lakes, and are useless as dyestuffs.

Since the nitroso-phenols are identical with the quinone monoximes (obtained by the action of hydroxylamine on the quinones) they are to be regarded as exhibiting tautomerism:

p-Nitroso-phenol

Quinone monoxime.

The dyes are usually applied on an iron mordant and give rise to fast shades of green. The most important member of the series is Fast Green O (dinitroso-resorcinol).<sup>2</sup>

Other dyestuffs of this class are :-

This last is obtained by the action of iron chloride on the nitroso-compound obtained from Schäffer's acid. soluble in water and dyes from an acid bath.

Gambin γ (nitroso-β-naphthol) is also placed on the market in the form of its water soluble sulphite ester:

under the names of sulfamine and naphthine S. It gives very fast shades of green on an iron mordant, and finds considerable application in printing.

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

B. 17, 213, 801, 2060, 2581; 18, 46 568, 2224; 19, 340. A. 208, 301.
 B. 8, 631. D.R.P. 65,049.

### SECTION II.—THE NITRO-DYES

The dyestuffs of this group contain the nitro-group as chromophore. They are the polynitro-derivatives of phenols or amines in which at least one nitro-group is in the ortho- or para-position to the hydroxyl or amino-group. They are all acid dyes and as a rule occur in commerce as their sodium or ammonium salts. The acidity is probably due to the capacity of the o- and p-nitro-phenols of forming tautomeric nitrolic acids:—

Direct evidence of this tautomerism has been obtained by the isolation of two esters of ortho-nitro-phenol.¹ One of these esters is coloured and labile, and is regarded as the ester of the aci-form of nitro-phenol. It passes into the colourless form which is stable and identical with o-nitro-anisole. As the salts of the nitro-phenols are always more highly coloured than the nitro-phenols themselves, it is probable that they are derived from the aci-form, and therefore have the quinonoid structure.

The ortho- and para-nitro amines also form highly coloured salts, and these are also probably derived from the nitrolic acid. Thus tetranitro-diphenylamine-o-sulphoxide is a yellow compound which dissolves in caustic soda to form a red sodium salt. On acidifying this solution the nitro-sulphoxide separates in a red form which rapidly passes into the yellow variety on heating.<sup>2</sup>

The nitro-dyes were formerly very largely used for

colouring silk and wool yellow, but owing to their fugitive nature are now but little used.

Picric acid (sym.-trinitro-phenol) is of interest as being the first dyestuff prepared in the laboratory. It was obtained by Welter in 1799 by the action of nitric acid on silk. It is now manufactured by the action of nitric acid on phenol sulphonic acid:—

In carrying out the process the sulphonic acid is not actually isolated, nitric acid being added to the sulphonation mixture after it has been diluted to a suitable extent (cf. Naphthol Yellow S). A more modern process consists in first preparing dinitro-phenol from dinitrochlorbenzole and then nitrating this to picric acid.

Although prepared on a very large scale in the explosives industry, picric acid is no longer used as a dyestuff owing to the very fugitive nature of the shades obtained.

Martius yellow is the sodium or calcium salt of 2.4-dinitro-α-naphthol. It is prepared by the action of nitric acid on the corresponding naphthol disulphonic acid.

Naphthol Yellow S is the most important nitro-dye. It is much faster than any other member of the group and is made by the action of nitric acid on α-naphthol-2.4.7-trisulphonic acid. The naphthol trisulphonic acid is not actually isolated, the process being carried out as follows. α-Naphthol is added to four parts of 25 per cent. oleum and heated to 125° C. until trisulphonation is complete, a little more oleum being added if necessary. The melt is then cooled and run on to ice (2½ parts of ice to every part of oleum used) and the resulting solution filtered. The filtrate is then nitrated by heating to 50° C. with dilute nitric acid (sp.gr. 1420), allowing 2½ parts of this acid to every part of α-naphthol. When nitration is complete the charge is allowed to stand over-night and the

dyestuff then filtered off, washed with brine, and collected. It forms an orange-yellow powder, which dyes silk and wool from an acid bath.

Aurantia is sym.-hexanitro-diphenylamine.4 It is prepared by condensing 2.4-dinitro-I-chloro-benzene with aniline and then nitrating the resulting dinitro-diphenylamine. The commercial article is the ammonium salt, but the dyestuff is no longer used.

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>1</sup> B. **39**, 1073. <sup>2</sup> Soc. **95**, 1253. <sup>3</sup> D R.P. 10,785. B. 22, 993

4 B 7, 1399; 9, 1245, 11, 845.

Pieric acid and aurantia are both used as explosives, and descriptions of their manufacture will be found in modern works on explosives, especially in Escales' "Nitrosprengstoffe," Leipzig, 1915 Other works on the subject are Chalons, "Les Explosifs Modernes," Paris, 1911; Marshall, "Explosives," London, 1917; and Colver, "High Explosives," London, 1918.

## SECTION III.—THE AZO-DYES

THIS is the largest and most important class of dyes and comprises all colouring matters containing the group ArN=NAr. It includes a few basic dyes, but the vast majority are acid dyes, a large number of which are substantative to cotton. The azohydrocarbons, e.g. azobenzene CaHaN=NCaHa, are coloured and give soluble coloured sulphonic acids but are of no value as dyestuffs, as they are devoid of tinctorial properties. Affinity for the fibre is only obtained by the introduction of hydroxyl or amino groups, carboxyl and sulphonic acid groups not having this effect. The property of dyeing cotton without a mordant also depends on the structure, and this point is further discussed on page 97. The azo dves are invariably manufactured from two or more components, one of which must be a primary aromatic amine and the others phenols or primary, secondary or tertiary amines.

When a primary aromatic amine is treated with nitrous acid (sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid), a diazo salt is formed:

$$C_6H_5NH_2+HNO_2+HCl = C_6H_5N=N-Cl+2H_2O$$

These diazo salts under suitable conditions "couple" with phenols and amines with the production of oxyazo or amino-azo compounds:

$$C_6H_5N=N.Cl+ArOH = C_6H_5N=N.ArOH+HCl$$

These are usually insoluble and hence unsuitable for use as dyestuffs, but their sulphonic acids dissolve easily and constitute the acid azo dyes. As almost all amines can be diazotized.\* and as the diazo compounds thus obtained can

<sup>\*</sup> When both amino groups of a diamine are simultaneously diazotized the process is spoken of as "tetrazotizing."

be coupled with almost all amines, phenols and naphthols, the number of azo dyes that have been studied is very large. Dyes containing only one azo group are known as monazo dyes, and those with two, three, four, five or six, as disazo, trisazo, tetrakisazo, pentakisazo and hexakisazo- dves. The diazo compounds as a rule are very unstable, and decompose at or just above the ordinary temperature. Hence diazotization is usually carried out in the presence of ice and the resulting solution or suspension of the diazo salt at once coupled with the second component. One or two diazo compounds can be separated and rendered stable by special treatment, and are sold as such for the production of "ice colours," i.e. colours in which the dyestuff is developed on the fibre by first padding the material with a phenol and then treating it with a diazo compound. The best known of these is Azophor Red, which is obtained by evaporating a strongly acid solution of diazotized p-nitraniline and then mixing with neutral salts.1 Azophor Blue is tetrazotized dianisidine treated in a similar manner.2 Nitrosamine Red is a paste obtained by treating diazotized p-nitraniline with alkali. It is a sodium salt which gives the diazo chloride on treatment with hydrochloric acid.3

Diazotization.—In most cases diazotization is an extremely simple process, and is carried out by dissolving or suspending the amine in dilute hydrochloric acid and then slowly adding the calculated amount of sodium nitrite solution. It is carried out in circular vats made of oak or pitch pine with a capacity of 1000-2000 gallons and provided with an efficient wooden agitator. The process is usually carried out at a temperature of 5-10° C., the cooling being effected simply by the direct addition of crushed ice. The nitrite should be added slowly, and after the whole has been added the product should show a faint reaction with starch iodide paper. When diazotization is complete the contents of the vat are run into another vat containing the second component. When the coupling is complete the dyestuff is salted out with common salt, collected in filter presses. dried (usually at about 50° C.) and ground up. In the

manufacture of polyazo dyestuffs after the first coupling is complete it is frequently the case that the product has to be coupled with another component under different conditions, or the couple has to be diazotized and then again coupled. When this is the case it is not usual to isolate the intermediate compounds, but simply to run or pump the solution from vat to vat until all the steps are complete.

Most diazo salts have a tendency to unite with primary amines to form diazoamino compounds:

$$ArN=NC1+H_2NAr = ArN=N-NHAr+HC1$$

As this reaction does not take place readily in strongly acid solutions, excess of hydrochloric acid is always used in diazotizing, the usual proportion being 2½ molecules of hydrochloric acid for every molecule of sodium nitrite. If acetic acid is used about 40 molecules are required to render diazotization complete.

In cases where the tendency to form aminoazo compounds is very great, e.g. p-nitraniline, the nitrite solution must be added very quickly, so that the whole is diazotized before the diazochloride has time to unite with unchanged base.

Insoluble or slightly soluble bases can be diazotized in suspension, but with sparingly soluble sulphonic acids it is frequently advantageous to dissolve them in alkali and then precipitate with excess of hydrochloric acid, as by this means they are more readily attacked by the nitrous acid.

Aminonaphthols in which the amino- and hydroxyl groups are in the ortho- (1.2.) position to each other are oxidized by nitrous acid to the corresponding  $\beta$ -naphtho-quinone. This oxidation, however, can be prevented by carrying out the diazotization in the presence of copper, mercury, zinc, iron, or nickel salts.<sup>4</sup> When this procedure is adopted only one equivalent of mineral acid is used, and in the case of an amino-naphthol sulphonic acid, no acid is used, the sulphonic acid liberating the nitrous acid. The amino naphthols can also be diazotized by replacing the mineral acid by acetic, oxalic, tartaric or phthalic acid.

In the case of diamines it frequently happens that it is

Some diamines, such as m-phenylenediamine, when diazotized couple so readily that diazo compounds can only be obtained by taking special precautions. Thus, if sodium nitrite is added to an acid solution of m-phenylene diamine, the tetrazo compound couples as soon as it is formed with two molecules of the unchanged diamine, the product in this case being the well-known dyestuff Bismarck Brown:

the other component. It is difficult, however, to avoid

Tetrazotization can, however, be brought about by using a large excess of acid and adding the diamine to the nitrite.<sup>5</sup> o-Phenylenediamine cannot be diazotized as it forms

azoiminobenzene: 
$$^6$$
  $C_6H_4$   $\stackrel{N}{\searrow}$   $NH$ .

reducing the azo group.

Negative groups, such as nitro and sulphonic acid groups, when in the ortho- or para- position to amino groups frequently prevent diazotization. Thus in the compound only the amino group at 4 can be diazotized.

After coupling, however, the remaining amino group is readily diazotized, and the same is the case if the amino group at 4 is acetylated.

In the benzene series, as a rule, both ortho- and paraamino azo compounds can be diazotized, but in the naphthalene series amino groups in the ortho position to an azo group are not attacked by nitrous acid.

Coupling.—The coupling of a diazo compound with a phenol is brought about in alkaline solution, the diazo solution being run slowly into an alkaline solution of the phenol, the whole being kept well agitated. The reaction takes place rapidly, and is usually complete in a few minutes; but the second component frequently unites very slowly with a tetrazotized base, and several days may elapse before coupling is complete.

It is important to have sufficient alkali present so that an alkaline reaction is maintained after the whole of the diazo solution has been added; but great excess of alkali is to be avoided, as this converts the diazo salt into the inactive anti-form.

The coupling with amines is brought about in neutral or faintly acid solution, and as it takes place readily in the presence of acetic acid the solution of the diazo compound and the amine can be mixed and sodium acetate then added until the whole is no longer acid to Congo paper. As a rule coupling takes place in the para-position to the hydroxyl or amino group, if this is free. If the para-position is occupied then coupling takes place in the ortho-position. If no para- or otho-position is free, as a rule no azo compound is formed, although in some cases the azo group replaces other substituents.

The above rules are fairly general, but there are some important exceptions, of which the following are the most important:—

Benzene Series.—p-Oxybenzoic acid and p-dimethyl amino benzoic acid couple in the para-position with elimination of carbon dioxide.

Dimethyl-p-toluidine, p-bromdimethylaniline and p-dimethylanino benzene sulphonic acid will not couple.

Naphthalene Series.—a-Naphthols containing nitro or sulphonic acid groups in the 3 or 5 positions couple in the

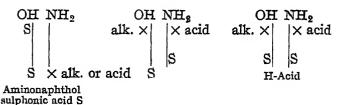
ortho position. Otherwise they couple in the para position, if this is free.  $\beta$ -Naphthols couple only in the ortho- $\alpha$ -position. If this is occupied they do not couple.  $\beta$ -Naphthol-6-sulphonic acid (Schaeffer's acid) couples very readily, whereas  $\beta$ -naphthol-8-sulphonic acid (Crocein acid) couples with difficulty, so that negative substituents at 8 seem to have some hindering effect.

As a rule naphthylamines couple easily and have little or no tendency to form diazoamino compounds.  $\alpha$ -Naphthylamine couples in the para- position when this is free, and in the ortho- position when it is occupied.  $\beta$ -Naphthylamine couples only in the ortho- $\alpha$ - position, and if this is occupied no azo compound is formed.  $\beta$ -Naphthylamine-6-8-disulphonic acid (amino acid G) does not couple or only couples with great difficulty, depending on the diazo compound.

The case of the amino naphthols is more complicated, and Bülow divides them into three classes, viz.:—

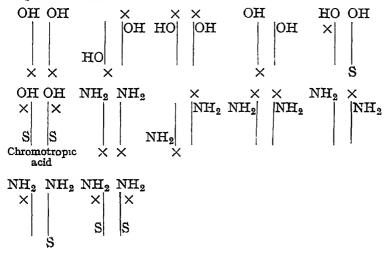
- (1) Those which do not couple, viz. the sulphonic acids of 1.2 and 2.1.aminonaphthols.
- (2) Those which couple in the same position whether in acid or alkaline solution.
- (3) Those which give isomeric ortho azo compounds, depending on whether coupled in acid or alkaline solution.

The following formulæ give the chief aminonaphthol sulphonic acids, the cross indicating the position of the entering azo group, "alk." signifying that the coupling is carried out in alkaline solution, and "acid" in acid solution:



$$\begin{array}{c|cccc} OH \times acid & \times acid \\ alk. \times & NH_2 & S & NH_2 \\ S & & alk. \times & OH \\ \\ Aminonaphthol & J-Acid. \\ \\ sulphonic acid G & & \\ \end{array}$$

The following formulæ give the coupling positions of the most important dioxy- and diamino-naphthalenes and their sulphonic acids:



Phenol yields a mono-, dis- and tris- azo compound. Salicylic acid yields a monoazo compound with great ease, and a disazo compound with difficulty. Polyhydric phenols yield polyazo compounds, and different isomers are obtained under different conditions as regards alkalinity, etc.<sup>8</sup>

 $\alpha$ -Naphthol gives a disazo compound,  $\beta$ -naphthol only a monazo. Monamines as a rule give only monazo compounds.

In some cases the azo group in one part of the molecule is capable of coupling with another part of the same molecule, e.g.—

N

Colour and Constitution.—No definite laws are known governing the relation between the colour of an azo dye and its constitution, but certain generalities appear of which the following are the most important.

Simple azo compounds containing only benzene nuclei are yellow, brown or orange, and the colour deepens with increasing molecular weight, although carboxyl and sulphonic groups have but little effect.

Nitro groups have a considerable influence in deepening the colour, this effect being most marked when they are in the para position to the azo group, and least marked when they are in the ortho position.

Amino and hydroxyl groups deepen the colour, this effect being less marked when they are acylated, whereas alkylation frequently has the opposite effect, and in some cases the brightening of the colour on alkylation is remarkable. Alkoxy groups attached to the benzidine nucleus tend very strongly to produce blue and violet shades.

Tetrazotized benzidine coupled with two benzene rings gives yellow dyes, with two naphthylene rings red dyes. When coupled with one benzene and one naphthylene ring the colour is intermediate, viz. orange.

Azo dyes derived from H-acid tend towards blue shades, whereas green shades are apparently only obtained when there is a nitro group in the molecule.

There is a curious relationship between affinity for cotton and colour exhibited by benzidine dyes. All benzidine derivatives that give direct cotton colours, when tetrazotized and coupled with naphthylamine sulphonic acids give red dyes, and with naphthol sulphonic acids violet and blue dyes. On the other hand, benzidine derivatives not yielding direct cotton colours, give yellow or orange shades when coupled with naphthylamine sulphonic acids, and red shades when coupled with naphthol sulphonic acids.

Disazo dyes of the general structure

$$R'.N=N-R-N=N-R''$$

are red when R is a benzene ring, and black when a naphthalene ring derived from α-naphthylamine. The orientation of the sulphonic acid groups in azo dyes is not without influence on the colour, although as a rule only slight differences in shade are produced. Thus, Orange IV. (sulphanilic acid->diphenylamine) is deeper coloured than the isomeric Metanil Yellow (metanilic acid->diphenylamine), and similarly in the naphthalene series dyes derived from R-acid are redder than isomeric dyes derived from G-acid.

Dianisidine gives the purest blue shades when coupled with 1.8-dioxy- or 1.8-aminoxy-naphthylene sulphonic acids; but even benzidine gives blue shades with these acids, as do unsymmetrical dialkyl p-phenylenediamines when coupled with sulphonated 1.8-dioxy-naphthalenes.

Direct Cotton Colours.—The relation between chemical constitution and affinity for cotton is not understood, but a considerable number of bases are known which give azo dyes which are substantative to cotton. As a general rule, these are of the nature of para diamines, but there are important exceptions. Unsaturation also seems to increase the affinity.

The simplest base yielding direct cotton colours is p-phenylenediamine, and 1.4- and 1.5-diamino-naphthalene exhibit the same property as do also their sulphonic acids.

 $p_2$ -Diaminodiphenylamine also yields direct cotton colours.

The most important class of bases, however, includes benzidine and its derivatives, and here we find curious exceptions. The following all yield disazo compounds, which are substantative to cotton:

and in general all benzidine derivatives substituted in the ortho position to the amino groups.

## 98 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

If, however, there are any substituents in the ortho position to the diphenyl linkage, substantative dyes are not obtained. Thus, for example, when a sulphonic acid group is ortho to the amino group, substantative dyes are formed, whereas when meta to the amino group they are not; and the same holds true with halogen atoms and methyl, methoxy and carboxyl groups, etc.

Substituents in the ortho position to the diphenyl bond, however, do not hinder the formation of direct cotton colours if they form part of a ring, all the following bases giving substantative cotton dyes:

Diaminofluorene. Diaminocarbazole. Benzidine sulphone

Diaminostilbene and its sulphonic acid both give direct cotton colours, as does also the analogous diaminoazobenzene

whereas the more saturated diaminodiphenyl methane and diaminodibenzyl do not.

Diaminoazoxybenzole also gives direct cotton colours, although it is in no way a para diamine:

THE AZO-DYES

LIBRARY

These colours, however, are dyed by a special method, viz. from a bath containing caustic, the goods the receiving one an after-treatment with sulphuric acid.

A large number of amino-ureas and aminothio-ureas have been found to yield substantative azo dyes. The simplest of these are derived from p-phenylenediamine:  $^{10}$ 

but more valuable dyes are obtained by using the corresponding derivatives of J-acid as a second component:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} S & & \\ \hline \\ OH & & \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} NH-CO-NH-\\ \hline \\ OH \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} S \\ \hline \\ OH \\ \end{array}$$

These dyes can be obtained either by coupling the urea with a diazo salt, or J-acid itself can be converted into an azo dye and the urea then formed by treatment with carbonyl or thiocarbonyl chloride. They are most valuable colours, most of the benzo fast scarlets belonging to this group.

J-acid itself gives substantative dyes, and this property is more strongly marked in phenyl J-acid, m-aminobenzoyl J-acid, and the compounds obtained by coupling two molecules of J-acid by means of ethylene chloride or chloracetyl chloride <sup>11</sup>.

Constitution of the Azo-dyes.—The formulæ for the azo-dyes can be written either in the azo or the quinonoid form, e.g.:

The quinoid structure receives support, at least in so far as ortho azo compounds are concerned, by the fact that o-oxy azo compounds do not form salts, and as a rule the amino group in o-amino azo compounds cannot be diazotized, and according to some authorities this quinonoid structure is supported by spectroscopic evidence.

On the other hand, the ease with which the azo group is split by reduction with the production of an amino compound rather points to the azo structure.

The question, which is chiefly of academic interest, cannot be said to be settled, and in all probability the truth will be found to lie in tautomerism.

In the following pages the azo notation is always employed as it is the usual one, and renders the formation of the compounds under consideration more clear.

#### BASIC AZO DYES.

The number of these is limited and although still used to a certain extent their interest is historical rather than practical.

The simplest is aniline yellow (aminoazobenzene) which is interesting as the first azo dye discovered. It is manufactured by heating diazoaminobenzene with excess of aniline, or directly from aniline by treating the hydrochloride in the presence of excess of aniline with a concentrated solution of sodium nitrite at 40° C. It is not used as a dyestuff, but only as an intermediate compound.

Chrysoidine <sup>12</sup> is prepared by coupling one molecule of diazobenzene chloride with *m*-phenylenediamine. It gives bright yellow shades, but they are not fast. As crysoidine absorbs the chemically active rays it finds application in making "safe" lights for photographic dark rooms. Bismarck brown <sup>18</sup> is a mixture of a monazo and a disazo compound, and is obtained when sodium nitrite is added to acid solutions of *m*-phenylenediamine, the diazotized and tetrazotized base coupling as soon as formed. The constituents therefore have the composition:

ACID, MORDANT AND AFTERCHROME AZO DYES.

All these contain one or more sulphonic acid groups.

Oxyazo dyes, of which one of the constituents is an ortho hydroxyl carboxylic acid, such as salicylic acid, form lakes with metallic salts, and hence are often dyed on mordanted fibre, as the colours are more fast than when no mordant is used.

Other oxyazo dyes have the property of forming lakes with chromium after they have been taken up by the fibre. These are dyed in the ordinary way without a mordant, the yarn being subsequently treated with potassium bichromate or chromium fluoride solution (after-chroming).\* This after-treatment greatly enhances the fastness of the colour, but as a rule completely changes it, reds frequently being changed to blue or black. The property of after-chroming seems to be confined to ortho-oxyazo compounds, and is particularly marked when an orthoaminophenol, an orthoaminonaphthol or chromotropic acid is one of the constituents.

A third class of colours is known in which the chroming and dyeing take place simultaneously, ammonium bichromate being added to the dyebath. These are known as

<sup>\*</sup> See Whittaker, "Dycing with Coal Tar Dyestuffs," this series, p. 54.

autochrome or metachrome colours to distinguish them from afterchrome colours, and are mostly derived from picraminic acid or o-aminophenol.

The number of azo colours is very large, over a thousand being articles of commerce, and the following are merely a few typical examples. A full list will be found in Schultz, "Farbstofftabellen," together with notes on their preparation and chief tinctorial properties.

The notation employed is very simple, and is almost self-explanatory. The base mentioned first is the base which is diazotized and arrows point to the bases or phenols with which it is coupled, the words "alk." and "acid" denoting, when necessary, whether the coupling is carried out in acid or alkaline solution. If the product is further diazotized and coupled, this is notified in the same way by an arrow pointing in the same direction. On the other hand, if it is coupled with a diazo salt, this is shown by an arrow pointing in the opposite direction.

```
Orange I.
                        .. Sulphanilic Acid -> a-Naphthol
                        .. Sulphanilic Acid \rightarrow \beta-Naphthol
Orange II. ..
Methyl Orange
                        .. Sulphanilic Acid -> Dimethyl Aniline
Fast Red A
                        .. Naphthionic Acid -> Phenol
Naphthylamine Brown
                        .. Naphthionic Acid -> a-Naphthol
Chromotrope 2R
                        .. Aniline -> Chromotropic Acid
                        .. p-Nitraniline -> Chromotropic Acid
Chromotrope 2B
Chromotrope 8B
                        .. Naphthionic Acid -> Chromotropic Acid
Lanazyl Violet
                        .. H-Acid → Ethyl α-Naphthylamine
Lanazyl Blue
                        .. H-Acid -> 1.5 Aminonaphthol
Chrome Yellow D ...
                        .. Brönner \beta-Acid \rightarrow Salicylic Acid
Alizarine Yellow GGW
                        .. m-Nitraniline -> Salicylic Acid
Biebrich Scarlet
                        .. Aminoazobenzene disulphonic Acid → β-naph-
Crocein Scarlet
                        .. Aminobenzene sulphonic Acid -> Crocein Acid
                           Xylidine
Resorcin Brown
                        ·· Sulphanilic Acid Resorcinol
                        Sulphanilic Acid ⇒ α-Naphthol
Fast Brown G
                           p-Nitraniline > H-Acid
Naphthol Blue Black
                           Aniline
Naphthol Black
                        .. Amino G Acid -> a-Naphthylamine -> Amino
                             R-Acid
                        .. Benzidene Sphenol (subsequently ethylated)
Diamine Yellow N
                        .. Benzidine Salicylic Acid
Naphthionic Acid
Benzo Orange R ..
```

Diamine Fast Red			Nitrobenzidine 🍣 Salicylic Acid (coupled first) Neville and Winter's Acid
Congo Red			Benzidine Naphthionic Acid
congo ma	••	• •	Naphthionic Acid
Benzopurpurine			Tolidine Naphthionic Acid
			- Naphthionic Acid
Congo Corinth	• •		Tolidine Naphthionic Acid Naphthionic Acid Naphthionic Acid Tolidine Neville and Winters Acid
•			Naphthionic Acid
Azo Violet	• •	• •	Dianisidine Naphthionic Acid Neville and Winter's Acid
			$_{a}$ a-Naphthylamine $\rightarrow$ 1.8 - Dioxy-
Benzo Indigo Blue	2		Benzidine ( naphthalene-4-sulphonic Acid
			Benzidine  a-Naphthylamine -> 1.8 - Dioxynaphthalene-4-sulphonic Acid 1.8 - Dioxynaphthalene - 4 - sul- phonic Acid
			2.8-Aminonaphthol-3.6-disulphonic Acid
			alk. A
Columbia Black	• •	••	Tolidine m-Toluylenediamine
			1.8-Aminonaphthol-3-6-disulphonic Acid
			alk. A
Diamine Green G	••	• •	Benzidine Salicylic Acid
			Resorcinol - Sulphanilic Acid
Congo Brown G	• •	••	Benzidine → Resorcinol ← Sulphanilic Acid Salicylic Acid
			Phenyl-β-naphthyl-
Sulphazurine			Benzidine sulphone amine
			Benzidine sulphone disulphonic Acid  Phenyl-β-naphthyl- amine  Phenyl-β-naphthyl- amine
			Character
Brilliant Yellow	••	• •	Diamino stilbene → Phenol disulphonic Acid → Phenol
Chamanhanina			Brilliant yellow with both hydroxyl groups
Chrysophenine	••	••	ethylated
			Neville and Winter's
St. Dennis Red		٠.	Diaminoazoxy benzene Acid Neville and Winter's
			Acid Acid
			Diaminodiphenyl urea Naphthionic Acid
Salmon Red	••	••	Diaminodiphenyl urea > Naphthionic Acid
			Salicylic Acid
Cotton Yellow G	• •	• •	Diaminodiphenyl urea Salicylic Acid
Brilliant Benzo Fast Violet Diaminodiphenyl urea 77-Acid			
			distribution and a really 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Cotton Yellow			p <sub>2</sub> -Diaminodiphenyl urea Salicylic Acid
COTTOIL TELION.	••	••	p <sub>2</sub> -Diaminodiphenyl urea Salicylic Acid

## INGRAINE OR ICE COLOURS.

Azo dyes which do not contain sulphonic acid groups are insoluble in water, and hence cannot be used in the ordinary way. They can, however, be formed on the fibre by treating

These navy blue shades are due to the formation of a tetrakisazo dye

Benzidine 
$$\stackrel{\alpha}{\Rightarrow} \stackrel{\alpha\text{-acid}}{\Rightarrow} \beta\text{-naphthol}$$
  $\stackrel{\alpha\text{-acid}}{\Rightarrow} \beta\text{-naphthol}$ 

which is too insoluble to be used as such.

In the above case if m-toluylenediamine is substituted for  $\beta$ -naphthol, jet black shades are obtained.

Another example of a developed colour is Diamine Orange N. In this case the material is dyed with

Tolidine 
$$\stackrel{m}{\leq}$$
 m-toluylenediamine sulphonic acid

and then developed with p-nitrodiazobenzene, the dyestuff formed being

Tolidine 
$$\leq m$$
-toluylenediamine sulphonic acid  $\sim p$ -nitraniline

Diamine green is applied in a similar way, the material first being dyed with

and developed with p-nitrodiazobenzene.

Primulines are widely applied by this method (see p. 108).

## STILBENE DYES.

When p-nitrotoluol-o-sulphonic acid is heated with caustic soda solution fast yellow dyes are obtained, which, according to Green and his co-workers, 14 must be classed as azo dyes. The shade varies according to the temperature and duration of the treatment, and according to the concentration of the alkali, but the following gives some idea of the general conditions employed.

Sun yellow, Curcumin S.<sup>15</sup>—One part of sodium nitrotoluol sulphonate is dissolved in 3 parts of boiling water and 3 parts of caustic soda solution of 30 per cent. strength,

older method consists in condensing dioxytartaric acid with phenylhydrazine sulphonic acid: 19

$$SO_3HC_6H_1NH-N_{1}H_2O = C$$

$$COOH$$

A more modern method <sup>20</sup> consists in condensing one molecule of phenylhydrazine sulphonic acid with oxalacetic ester and then coupling the product with diazotized sulphanilic acid, the ester thus formed being subsequently hydrolysed:

Taitrazine has no affinity for cotton, but dyes wool in beautiful yellow shades, which are remarkably fast to light.

Other dyes containing the pyrazolone ring have been placed on the market, but they are of no great importance. They are all prepared by coupling diazo salts with pyrazolones.<sup>21</sup>

Cotton Yellow R .. .. Primuline→ Salicylic Acid.

Rosophenine SG ... .. Primuline → Neville and Winter's Acid. Alkali Brown ... .. Primuline → m-Phenylene diamine.

Clayton yellow <sup>23</sup> is derived from dehydrothiotoluidine sulphonic acid by diazotizing one molecule and coupling it with another. It is a diazo amino compound and is the polysulphonic acid of

$$CH_3 \longrightarrow C - C_0H_4 - N = N - NH - C < N - CH_3$$

The dyestuff makes a useful indicator, as although it is turned red by caustic alkali, it is almost unaffected by soda, ammonia, phenolates, and naphtholates.

In addition to this one or two true azo compounds are derived from dehydrothiotoluidine. Thus Diamine Pink is obtained when diazotized dehydrothiotoluidine is coupled with 1.8-chloronaphthol-3-6-disulphonic acid, and other similar dyes are obtained from dehydrothioxylidine.

An interesting series of thiazole dyes have been prepared by condensing *m*-nitrobenzaldehyde with 2-amino-5-oxynaphthalene-7-sulphonic acid and subsequent treatment of the resulting azomethine with sodium sulphide and sulphur.

This gives red azo dyes when coupled with diazo compounds which when diazotized on the fibre and developed form very fast red shades, e.g. Diazo Brilliant Scarlet.<sup>24</sup>

One or two thiazole dyes may conveniently be mentioned here, although they contain no azo group.

Mimosa.—This is a yellow dye obtained by treating diazotized primuline with ammonia.

. 44

# SECTION IV.—THE DIPHENYLMETHANE DYES

This is not an important class of colouring matter, but one or two numbers are worthy of notice. The simplest of these is auramine O, which was originally obtained by heating Michler's ketone with zinc and ammonium chlorides to 150° C.; but a better process consists in heating the ketone with sulphur and sodium and ammonium chlorides in a stream of ammonia gas. Probably the thioketone is first formed, the sulphur atom then being displaced by an imino group:

The corresponding o-toluidine derivative is auramine G,<sup>3</sup> Both dye yellow on a tannin mordant, but as they are readily decomposed by boiling water must be dyed at a low temperature.

One or two diphenyl methane derivatives containing the pyronine ring have also found application. The most important of these is pyronine G.<sup>4</sup> This is prepared by condensing dimethyl-m-aminophenol with formaldehyde and subsequent oxidation of the leuco base thus obtained:

## 112 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

$$\begin{array}{c|c} Me_2N & OH & HO \\ \hline H & H & \\ O & \\ CH_2 & \\ \hline \\ Me_2N & O \\ \hline \\ CH_2 & \\ \hline \\ O & \\ NMe_3 & \\ \hline \\ O & \\ NMe_2CI & \\ \hline \\ O & \\ O & \\ NMe_2CI & \\ \hline \\ O & \\ O & \\ NMe_2CI & \\ \hline \\ O & \\ O$$

The corresponding ethyl compound is pyronine B.

An interesting dyestuff, rhodoamine S.5 is obtained by substituting succinic anhydride for formaldehyde:

Other dyestuss containing the pyronine ring are mostly derivatives of triphenylmethane and are treated in the next section.

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>1</sup> D.R.P. 29,060.

<sup>2</sup> D.R.P. 53,614, 58,277. <sup>3</sup> D.R.P. 67,478.

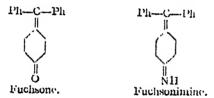
<sup>4</sup> D.R.P. 58,955, 59,033. <sup>5</sup> D.R.P. 51,983.

# SECTION V.—THE TRIPHENYL METHANE DYES

These are all amino- or oxy- derivatives of triphenyl methane and may be divided into four groups as follows:—

- 1. Malachite Green group, derived from  $p_2$ -diamino triphenyl methane.
- 2. Fuchsine or Rosaniline group, derived from /3-triamino triphenyl methane.
- 3. The Rosolic acids, derived from p<sub>3</sub>-trioxytriphenyl methane.
- The Phthaleins, Rhodamines and Pyronines, derived from dioxy or diamino triphenyl methane carboxylic acid.

An alternative classification is to divide them into fuchsones and fuchsonimines according to whether they are derived from oxy or amino triplenyl methane.



Technically the malachite greens and rosanilines are the most important.

The triphenylmethane dyes are remarkable for the brightness of their shades. The unsulphonated dyes are basic colours, the sulphonated members acid colours.

# 1. THE MALACHITE GREEN GROUP.

When p-amino triplienylmethane is oxidized the corresponding carbinole is formed. This is a colourless . R 2.

# 114 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

compound but is unstable, and in the presence of acids splits out water and passes into the highly coloured quinonoid compound, the dyestuff:

If this dyestuff is treated with alkali, the corresponding highly coloured and ionized ammonium base is formed. On standing, however, the colour fades and the electrical conductivity falls and the ammonium base passes into the colourless and non-ionized carbinol: <sup>1</sup>

On reduction the dyestuff passes into the triphenyl methane derivative, which must therefore be regarded as its leuco compound.

The malachite green dyes can be prepared by condensing benzotrichloride with an aromatic amine having a free para position: <sup>2</sup>

$$\begin{array}{c|c} Cl & Cl \\ PhC & Cl & H & C_6H_4NMe_2 \\ \hline Cl & H & C_6H_4NMe_2 & \longrightarrow & PhC & C_6H_4NMe_2 \\ \end{array}$$

This process, however, is out of date, the dyes now being manufactured by condensing an aromatic aldehyde (benzaldehyde) with an aromatic amine, condensation taking place in the para position to the amino group. The leuco compound thus formed is oxidized to the carbinol (usually with lead dioxide) and this converted into the dyestuff by treatment with hydrochloric acid:

$$PhCH: \begin{matrix} \hline \\ O \\ \\ H \\ C_6H_4NMe_2 \end{matrix} \longrightarrow PhCH \begin{matrix} C_6H_4NMe_2 \\ \\ C_6H_4NMe_2 \end{matrix}$$

Various agents have been proposed from time to time for bringing about the condensation, but anhydrous zinc chloride gives the best results. The aldehyde and the base in calculated quantities are stirred together in a steamheated vessel, and the zinc chloride added slowly, the weight of chloride used being about the same as that of the aldehyde. The temperature of the melt is maintained at 90–110° C. for about two days, and then any unchanged aldehyde and/or base blown off by steam. The carbinol is then filtered off from the zinc chloride solution, washed, dissolved in dilute hydrochloric acid and oxidized with lead dioxide. After precipitating the dissolved lead with the calculated quantity of sodium sulphate the dyestuff is salted out, often as its zinc chloride double salt, by adding common salt and zinc chloride.

The simplest member of this group is Doebner's violet, prepared from benzaldehyde and aniline, but it is of no technical value. Far the most important member is malachite green itself, which is prepared from benzaldehyde and dimethyl aniline. Its dichloro-derivative, obtained from dichlor benzaldehyde, has been placed on the market as Victoria green. The corresponding ethyl compound, obtained from benzaldehyde and diethyl aniline, has found some application under the name of brilliant green.

Acid Malachite Green Dyes.—The sulphonated malachite green dyes have found application as acid wool colours. They can be obtained by condensing an aromatic aldehyde with a sulphonated base, or by sulphonating the leuco compound. One of the best-known of these sulphonated colours is Patent Blue V.<sup>4</sup> This is manufactured by condensing m-oxybenz-aldehyde with diethyl aniline, and then treating the leuco compound thus formed with oleum at the ordinary temperature until a sample is completely soluble in water. The sulphonated leuco base thus obtained is oxidized to the dyestuff in the usual way. As the dyestuff contains both acid and basic groups, internal salt formation takes place:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} HO & -C < \begin{matrix} C_6H_4\mathrm{NEt_2} \\ C_6H_4=\mathrm{NEt_2} \end{matrix} \\ -SO_2 -O \end{array}$$

#### 116 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

Another process by which this dyestuff is manufactured consists in condensing *m*-nitrobenzaldehyde with diethyl aniline and then reducing the nitro group to an amino group. The amino group is then replaced by hydroxyl by the diazo reaction and the leuco base sulphonated as before.

A few dyes have been prepared which belong to the malachite green group and at the same time contain an azo group. They are not of great importance, but azo green is worth mentioning. This is prepared by condensing mnitrobenzaldehyde with dimethyl aniline and then reducing the nitro group. The amino leuco base is then diazotized and coupled with salicylic acid in the usual way. The product dyes green on a chrome mordant, but the shades are very loose to soap.

#### 2. THE FUCHSINE OR ROSANILINE GROUP.

The simplest and best known member of this group is fuchsine or rosaniline itself, the constitution of which was demonstrated by E. and O. Fischer in the following manner.<sup>5</sup>

Rosaniline when reduced gives a colourless compound (paraleucaniline) which when diazotized and reduced by boiling with alcohol gives triphenylmethane.

On the other hand, triphenylmethane gives a trinitro compound which on oxidation gives a carbinol which passes on reducing the nitro groups into pararosaniline. Obviously paraleucaniline is a triamino triphenyl methane, but the position of the amino groups is uncertain.

Now when benzaldehyde is condensed with aniline a diamino triphenyl methane is obtained, which yields a dioxy derivative when the amino groups are replaced by hydroxyl by the diazo reaction. This dioxy derivative gives  $p_2$ -dioxybenzophenone when fused with alkali, and hence the amino groups in the diamino triphenyl methane must both have been in the para position to the methane carbon atom.

Again, p-nitrobenzaldeliyde condenses with aniline to form a nitrodiamino triphenyl methane in which we are

are present in about equal quantities. It is not customary to use pure nitrobenzole for the oxidation, as it is more economical to employ the mixture of nitrobenzole and nitrotoluoles used in making aniline oil for red.

The process is carried out in a cast-iron kettle provided with a reflux condenser and an efficient agitator and heated by direct fire, gas firing being usually employed. The bases, or mixture of bases with the dry hydrochlorides, are well agitated with half their weight of nitrobenzole and heated to 190° C. The iron turnings are then slowly fed in and the agitation and temperature maintained until a sample on being withdrawn sets solid, which is usually the case after 10-12 hours. When the oxidation is complete the melt is run out into shallow iron trays and allowed to cool. It is then broken up, dissolved in water and unchanged nitrobenzole and bases blown off with steam, after which the grosser insoluble impurities are allowed to settle and the supernatant liquor drawn off and filtered. The filtrate on cooling first deposits a certain amount of a violet colouring matter, and this is removed by filtration before the main bulk of the magenta is allowed to separate. The separation of the magenta either takes place on simple cooling, or a certain amount of salt is added to the solution to render the dve less soluble. It is finally recrystallized from water containing some hydrochloric acid.

(b) The New Fuchsine Process.—When formaldehyde reacts with a primary aromatic base, such as aniline, condensation takes place with the elimination of water, anhydroformaldehyde aniline being produced:

$$H_2C=O+H_2NC_6H_5 = CH_2=NC_6H_5$$

If this is heated to 100° C, with aniline hydrochloride in aniline solution for some hours, condensation takes place, together with intramolecular rearrangement and  $p_2$ -diamino-diphenylmethane is formed:

 $CH_2=NC_6H_5+C_6H_5NH_2 = (NH_2C_6H_4)_2CH_2$ and this on heating to a higher temperature with aniline

$$_{3C_{6}H_{5}N(CH_{3})_{2}+3O} = C \underbrace{ C_{6}H_{5}=N \underbrace{ CH_{3}}_{Cl} }_{(C_{6}H_{5}N(CH_{3})_{2})_{2}} +_{3}H_{2}O$$

Methyl Violet.

The oxidation is brought about by heating to 40-60° C. with cupric chloride, or a mixture of cupric nitrate or sulphate and common salt, in the presence of acetic acid or phenol, the copper being subsequently precipitated by the addition of sodium sulphide.11

When methyl violet is boiled with benzyl chloride and alkali in alcoholic solution, benzyl pentamethyl rosaniline is formed.12 This dyes in rather bluer shades than methyl violet, and finds application under the name of methyl violet 6B.

When rosaniline is methylated by treatment with methyl chloride, not more than three methyl groups can be introduced, but a hexamethyl rosaniline can be prepared by indirect methods, and this hexamethyl compound occurs in commerce as crystal violet. It is manufactured from dimethyl aniline by the phosgene process, or by condensing tetramethyl diaminobenzhydrol with dimethylaniline in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid at 100° C. After neutralizing the acid the excess of dimethyl aniline is blown off by steam, and the leuco base oxidized with lead dioxide in the usual way: 13

As stated on page 117 hexamethyl rosaniline is capable of uniting with a seventh molecule of methyl chloride to give a quaternary ammonium salt. The manufacture is carried out by heating methyl violet base in alcoholic solution in an autoclave to 95° C. and then pumping in methyl chloride, alkali being simultaneously added so as to keep the solution neutral. The resulting dyestuff is used for dyeing silk green under the name of methyl green.14 Ethyl derivatives corresponding to the above polymethyl rosanilines have also been prepared, but do not call for special notice.

Acid Triphenylmethane Dyes.—Acid dyestuffs are obtained from magenta and its derivatives by the introduction of sulphonic acid groups. Magenta itself on treatment with four parts of 20 per cent. oleum at 120–170° C. yields a trisulphonic acid known as acid magenta. When sulphonation is complete the melt is dissolved in water, limed out, and the calcium salt of the dyestuff converted into the sodium salt by double decomposition with sodium carbonate. The sulphonation products of methyl and crystal violet are of no value as dyestuffs, but valuable acid dyes are obtained by sulphonating phenyl and tolyl rosanilines. These phenyl and tolyl rosanilines are too insoluble in water to be used as dyestuffs although they can be applied in alcoholic solution, but their sulphonic acids are readily soluble and have been used to a considerable extent. 16

The unsulphonated bases are manufactured by heating rosaniline with aniline or toluidine in the presence of an organic acid or a salt of an organic acid. The part played by the organic acid is purely catalytic, and when the reaction is finished the acid can be recovered unchanged. Technically, acetic acid and benzoic acids are the only ones used, but salicylic, stearic and oleic acids function in a similar way. Dicarboxylic acids, on the other hand, do not seem to have the same effect.

The most important of these arylrosanilines is the triphenyl derivative, usually known as aniline blue, spirit soluble, or spirit blue. In its manufacture 25 parts of rosaniline and two parts of benzoic acid are heated to 180° C. with 250 parts of aniline. One part of benzoic acid is then slowly added, the temperature being maintained at 180° C. and the melt well agitated. Torrents of ammonia gas are evolved and after about 8-9 hours the condensation is complete. The melt is then allowed to cool, and when cold emptied into sufficient hydrochloric acid to dissolve the aniline and precipitate the dyestuff as its insoluble hydrochloride. In order to obtain pure blue shades almost

1'51 +1,

chemically pure aniline, free from toluidine, must be used. Such qualities of aniline are known in commerce as "aniline or blue."

On treating aniline blue with ten parts of concentrated sulphuric acid at 35° C. it is converted into a monosulphonic acid, which is easily isolated by simply running the melt into water, as the free acid is insoluble. The sodium salt, however, dissolves readily, and is used for wool and silk under the name of Nicholson's blue or alkali blue.

Sulphonation at 100° C. leads to a trisulphonic acid (water blue) which is used for dyeing cotton on a tannin or tin mordant.

Diphenyl naphthyl methanes have been obtained by methods similar to those used in the manufacture of triphenyl methanes. Thus, Michler's ketone condenses with phenyl- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine to form Victoria blue, and with p-tolyl- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine to form night blue. This latter forms insoluble compounds with certain dyes and is used in their estimation.

#### 3. AURINES OR ROSOLIC ACIDS.

The aurines or rosolic acids are the hydroxyl analogues of rosaniline:

They can be manufactured by condensing formaldehyde with phenols in a manner exactly analogous to the new fuchsine process, or by condensing phenols with oxalic acid in the presence of sulphuric acid, the decomposition of the oxalic acid furnishing the methane carbon atom.<sup>17</sup>

They have but little affinity for the fibre and are almost useless as dyestuffs, although some of their lakes were at one time used for colouring paper.

About the most important is chrome violet R, obtained by condensing formaldehyde with salicylic acid, the leuco compound of which is regarded as trioxytriphenyl methane tricarboxylic acid.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} C_{\rm eH_4CO_2H} & C_{\rm eH_4-CO} & C_{\rm eH_4COOII} \end{array}$$

The condensation of phthalic anhydride with resorcinol can be brought about simply by heating the two together for some hours to 180-200° C., but takes place more readily in the presence of a condensing agent such as zinc chloride or sulphuric acid.

Fluorescein itself is scarcely used as a dyestuff, although its sodium salt occurs under the name uranine, but its bromo and iodo substitution products meet with considerable application. The tetrabrominated product is eosine, the bromination being brought about at the ordinary temperature in aqueous or alcoholic solution.<sup>21</sup>

Diiodo and tetraiodo fluoresceins are obtained when fluorescein is dissolved in dilute caustic soda and treated with the calculated amount of iodine in the same solvent. They find application for photographic purposes under the name of erythrosine.

Phloxine is tetrabromdichlorfluoresceine, prepared by condensing dichlorphthalic acid with resorcinol and then brominating, and Rose Bengal is the corresponding tetraiodo compound.

Nitrobromo fluoresceius have also been described.

Two important colours also belonging to this class are galleïne and cœruleïne, which are derived from pyrogallol.<sup>22</sup> The condensation is brought about by heating phthalic anhydride and gallic or pyrogallic acid and sulphuric acid to 200° C.:

Galleine produces red-violet shades on a chrome mordant and finds considerable application in printing. On further heating with 20 parts of concentrated sulphuric acid it loses a molecule of water, forming cœruleïne:

This produces olive-green shades on a chrome mordant.

The rhodamines are the amino analogues of fluoresceine, and are derived from *m*-aminophenol. They are manufactured by condensing phthalic anhydride with dimethyl or diethyl-*m*-aminophenol: <sup>23</sup>

or by replacing the hydroxyl groups in fluoresceine by chlorine by means of phosphorus chloride and then heating the fluoresceine chloride thus produced with alkylamines.

The former process is the more convenient, and is carried out by heating 10 parts of dimethyl-m-amino phenol with 12 parts of phthalic anhydride for five hours at 170° C. out of contact with the air. On cooling the melt sets solid, and consists chiefly of the phthalate of the dye base. This is too insoluble for use as a dyestuff, and must be converted into the more readily soluble chloride, sulphate, or oxalate. This can be done by digesting with cold aqueous ammonia, and then extracting the free base with benzole or other solvent, the chloride being subsequently obtained from the

ilianete..

# SECTION VI.—THE INDAMINES AND INDOPHENOLS

These are all derivatives of quinone imides or quinone diimides, the indophenols differing from the indamines by containing two amino- and one phenolic residue, whereas the indamines contain three amino residues.

Both series of compounds are capable of tautomerism:

and both on reduction pass into soluble *leuco*-compounds which are readily oxidized back to the dyestuff by atmospheric oxygen:

As will be seen, these *leuco*-compounds are diamino-, dioxy-, or amino-oxy-diphenylamines, and it is notable that they cannot be oxidized to the corresponding quino-noid compounds unless there is a hydroxyl or an amino-group in both para-positions with reference to the diphenylamine nitrogen atom. Thus neither of the compounds

H. Indian

gives an indamine on oxidation.

The indamines and indophenols are insoluble substances, and hence this property of giving soluble reduction products can be made use of in dyeing with them, the dyeing being carried out in a hydrosulphite vat and the fabric subsequently exposed to the air, exactly as is done in the case of the indigoid and anthraquinonoid vat dyes.

All the indamines and indophenols are either green or blue in colour, but the shades obtained are very loose as the dyes are rather unstable and in the presence of acids readily decompose into the quinone and the diamine:

$$NMe_2$$
 $NMe_2$ 
 $NMe_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_3$ 

The indamines and the indophenols can be prepared by two methods, viz.—

I. A quinone imide or quinone diimide is condensed with an amine or a phenol having a free para-position. Here probably the first action of the amine is an addition to the quinonoid with the production of a hydrazine (II), which then undergoes a semidine rearrangement:

$$0 \quad I. \quad HO \quad III. \quad HO \quad III. \quad NH_2$$

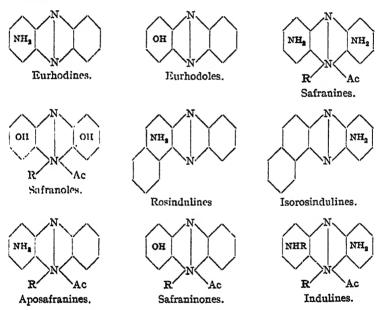
the diamino- or amino-oxy-diphenylamine (III) then being oxidized to the dyestuff (IV) either by the air or at the expense of another molecule of the quinonoid.

#### SECTION VII.—THE AZINES

In these dyes the chromophore is the azine group



They can be divided into two classes, viz. the azines proper and the azonium compounds, in the latter of which an alkyl or aryl group is attached to one of the cyclic nitrogen atoms. They can be further subdivided into the following classes:



All the azines are capable of double symmetrical tautomerism, and therefore, as would be expected, are all strongly fluorescent:

e to take to

- (i) Laurent <sup>2</sup> obtained dinaphthazine by heating  $\alpha$ -nitronaphthalene with lime, and Wohl obtained diphenazine by heating nitrobenzene with caustic soda.
- (ii) Hinsberg <sup>3</sup> obtained azines by condensing  $\alpha$ -diketonic compounds such as glyoxal, phenanthraquinone  $\beta$ -naphthoquinone, etc., with ortho-diamines:

$$C = |O - H_2|N \longrightarrow C N$$

The reaction takes place very readily by simply heating the components in some suitable solvent such as glacial acetic acid or in sodium bisulphite solution. Such compounds are known as quinoxalines and are of great service for identifying ortho-diamines.

Instead of  $\alpha$ -diketones,  $\alpha$ -nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol  $^4$  can be used:

(iii) Merz <sup>5</sup> found that azines are formed when orthodioxy phenols are heated in the air with orthodiamines:

$$\bigcirc_{\mathrm{OH}\ \mathrm{H_{2}N}}^{\mathrm{OH}\ \mathrm{H_{2}N}} \bigcirc \stackrel{\mathrm{o}}{\longrightarrow} \bigcirc_{\mathrm{N}}^{\mathrm{N}}$$

(iv) Witt 6 found that azines are formed when a phenol which is substituted in the para-position is carefully oxidized in the presence of an ortho-diamine:

presence of concentrated acid. The simple azines have no tinctorial properties, affinity for the fibre only being acquired by the entrance of hydroxyl or amino- groups into the molecule. The hydroxyl derivatives are weak acids, but the tinctorial properties are usually very feeble.

#### THE EURHODINES

These are the amino-azines and can be obtained by the same means as the simple azines. Thus if an  $\alpha$ -diketone is condensed with an aromatic triamine  $^{9}$  in which two of the amino groups are in the ortho-position to one another, a monamino-azine is formed. A similar compound is obtained if a diamino-azo-compound, such as chrysoidine, is heated with  $\beta$ -naphthol:

$$_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$$
  $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$ 

The amino-azines can also be obtained when any σ-amino-azo-compound is heated with the hydrochloride of certain aromatic monamines, such as α-naphthylamine, best in phenol solution. During the reaction it is probable that the azo-compound first becomes reduced to the corresponding ortho-diamine and that this then condenses with the monamine, the hydrogen split off during the condensation reducing a further quantity of the azo-compound:

A very general method of obtaining eurhodines consists in heating p-nitroso-amines  $^{11}$  (or quinone dichlorimides) with monamines which are substituted in the para-position, such as  $\beta$ -naphthylamine. Here it is probable that the nitroso-amine reacts in the quinonoid form and adds on

a molecule of the monamine in the usual way. 12 Water then splits out and the *leuco*-azine is finally oxidized at the expense of more of the nitroso-compound:

Hence three molecules of nitroso-compound condense with two molecules of the amine:

$$_{3C_{6}H_{4}}$$
 $\stackrel{NO}{\underset{NMe_{2}}{\bigvee}} + _{2C_{10}H_{7}NH_{2}} = _{2C_{6}H_{4}[NMe_{3}]} \stackrel{N}{\underset{N}{\bigvee}} C_{10}H_{7}$ 
 $+ _{C_{6}H_{4}} \stackrel{NMe_{2}}{\underset{NH_{3}}{\bigvee}} + _{3H_{2}O}$ 

This method usually gives excellent results and is employed on the large scale. It is best carried out by boiling the constituents in glacial acetic acid solution.

Finally, eurhodines are obtained when certain orthoamino indamines are boiled with dilute acids. Thus toluylene red or neutral red extra is obtained by boiling toluylene blue with dilute acids. <sup>13</sup> Here, again, the reaction is probably the addition of a primary amine to a quinonoid group, but in this case the condensation is intramolecular:

The last step depends upon atmospheric oxygen, and if large quantities are being dealt with air should be blown

Transer.

through the solution, as if this is not done, considerable quantities of the indamine will be reduced.

The manufacture is an extremely simple matter, as it is only necessary to mix solutions of nitrosodimethyl aniline hydrochloride and *m*-phenylene diamine and warm gently. On standing toluylene blue separates, and on boiling this with dilute acid, and at the same time blowing air through the solution by means of a perforated pipe, it is converted into neutral red extra.

Neutral violet <sup>14</sup> is obtained by the oxidation of a mixture of dimethyl-p-phenylene diamine and m-phenylene diamine. Here the indamine is first formed, which then passes into the diamino-azine, as in the case of neutral red. This is then allowed to add on another molecule of the para-diamine, the *leuco-azine* being then oxidized to the dye:

$$Me_2N$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 

## THE AZONIUM COMPOUNDS (SAFRANINES AND INDULINES)

The azonium compounds are vastly more important than the azines proper. They are all highly coloured, but have but poor tinctorial properties unless an amino-group is present. The commercial dyes are all azonium salts, and the free bases as a rule cannot be isolated in a state of purity.

The simple azonium compounds can be obtained by condensing the a-diketones with o-amino secondary amines. 15

Thus flavinduline is prepared by condensing o-aminodiphenylamine with phenanthraquinone: 16

Flavinduline is the only commercial dye made by this process, the other azonium compounds being made by one of the following methods:—

(i) By condensing quinone dichlorimides with secondary amines which are substituted in the para-position.<sup>17</sup> This method is of no technical importance. The reaction consists in the addition of the amine to the quinone, loss of hydrochloric acid and then tautomeric change:

(ii) By condensing the hydrochlorides of para-nitroso tertiary amines, such as nitroso dimethyl aniline, with secondary amines such as phenylnaphthylamine. The course of the reaction is exactly analogous to the condensation of the nitroso bases with primary amines which was discussed on page 138. Here also the oxidation is brought about at the expense of part of the nitroso-compound:

NOH
$$+ 2$$

$$CINMe_{2}$$

$$+ NMe_{2}C_{0}H_{4}NH_{2}HC$$

$$+ 3H_{2}O$$

$$+ 3H_{2}O$$

Neutral Blue. 19

The condensation is best brought about by heating to 100° C. in glacial acetic acid solution. The acetic acid

is then distilled off in vacuo, the residue dissolved in water and the dyestuff salted out.

- (iii) Diamino-azonium bases are formed when an indamine is oxidized in the presence of a monamine, and this very important process is capable of several variations, viz.:
- (a) The indamine is prepared from the corresponding nitroso-compound.
- (b) The indamine is not isolated but is formed as an intermediate product, the azine being formed in one operation by the joint oxidation of one molecule of a diamine and two molecules of a monamine. In order that this method may be successful it is necessary for at least one of the amino-groups of the diamine to be primary, as otherwise no indamine could be formed. Instead of using two molecules of one monamine, one molecule each of two different monamines can be used. In this case one of the monamines must have an unsubstituted para-position so as to allow of indamine formation, and the other monamine must be primary.
- (c) A meta-amino secondary amine is oxidized in the presence of a diamine. This modification is of theoretical importance, as it has led to the proof of the symmetrical constitution of the safranines as follows:—

When meta-amino-diphenylamine is oxidized in the presence of para-phenylene diamine, safranine formation might take place in two directions, leading to a symmetrical compound (I) or to an unsymmetrical compound (II):

Now, methyl-meta-phenylene diamine, when oxidized in the presence of p-phenylene diamine, gives a safranine:

$$_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}\bigcirc_{\mathrm{NH}}^{\mathrm{NH}} + ^{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}\bigcirc_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}^{\mathrm{NH_{2}}} \quad \Rightarrow \quad _{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}\bigcirc_{\mathrm{NH}}^{\mathrm{NH}}$$

This would be impossible if the reaction took place according to II.

Again, Nietzki  $^{20}$  has shown that the same compound is obtained by oxidizing a mixture of m-amino-diphenylamine and p-amino-diphenylamine as is obtained by oxidizing a mixture of m-phenyl-amino-diphenylamine and p-phenylenediamine. This is only explicable on the assumption that the reaction takes the course I:

(d) Finally, azonium compounds are formed when amino-azo-compounds are heated with the hydrochloride of a monamine. In this case probably part of the azo-compound becomes reduced to the diamine, which then condenses with the monamine to form the indamine, the oxidation being brought about by the reduction of more of the azo-compound.

Section 1

In all cases the formation of the azine from the indamine (I) and monamine is due to the condensation of the monamine with the quinonoid indamine to form a complex diarylamine (II), oxidation to a quinonoid compound (III), and then intramolecular condensation (IV) followed by oxidation (V):

In preparing azines by the joint oxidation of a p-diamine and a monamine, the diamine is usually prepared by the reduction of a suitable azo-compound or nitroso-amine. The oxidation is best carried out with sodium bichromate or manganese dioxide.

One of the best known dyes of this group is azo carmine G. It is obtained by heating benzene-azo-a-naphthylamine hydrochloride with aniline and aniline hydrochloride at 130° C. After cooling the melt is ground up and purified by extraction with boiling dilute hydrochloric acid and toluol. The residue is then sulphonated by heating with 4 parts of 23 per cent. oleum at 100° C. The dyestuff is the sulphonic acid of

Azo carmine B is the sodium salt of the trisulphonic acid.
The name *Indulins* is usually given to those dyes which are obtained by heating an amino-azo-compound

with aniline and aniline salts. The reactions which take place are extremely complicated and depend on the conditions under which the melt is carried out. Probably some safranine is formed by the series of reactions described on pages 142, 143. This, being a quinonoid compound, is capable of condensing with another molecule of the amine. On oxidation this again passes into a quinonoid compound which can then condense with another molecule of the amine, and so on:

Witt  $^{22}$  has investigated the reaction and finds that when amino-azo-benzene is heated with aniline and aniline hydrochloride to 100° azophenine is formed. At a higher temperature this condenses with the p-diamine formed simultaneously to form induline B or 3B:

On further heating this passes into still bluer products, either by the ordinary quinonoid condensation or by the phenylation of the amino group, this latter reaction being exactly analogous to the formation of diphenylamine by heating aniline with aniline hydrochloride.

Another possible explanation of the reaction is that the amino-azo-compound reacts in the quinonoid form and first undergoes a semidine change:

and in confirmation of this it has been pointed out that benzene-azo- $\alpha$ -naphthol, on prolonged boiling with acetic acid, passes into an analogous compound:

This quinone di-imide might then condense with aniline to form the azine as follows:

Which of these reactions takes place it is impossible to say until the reaction has been investigated much more fully. The indulines obtained by the amino-azo melt are usually spirit soluble colours. They are converted into water soluble dyes by sulphonation.

The following are a few of the most important azonium colours:

R 2.

Joint oxidation of aniline and toluidine Interesting as the first artificial dye prepared commercially.

Induline Scarlet.

By fusing azo-derivatives of ethyl-paratoluidine with  $\alpha$ -naphthylamine, D.R.P. 77226.

$$\mathrm{Me_2N} \bigvee_{N}^{N}$$

By condensing nitroso-dimethyl aniline with phenyl- $\beta$ -naphthylamine. D.R.P. 19224.

Neutral Blue.

NHC6H4CH3

By condensing nitroso-dimethyl-aniline hydrochloride with 2.7-ditolyl-naphthylene diamine. D.R.P. 40886.

Me<sub>2</sub>N NHEt

Basle Blue.

By condensing nitroso-dimethyl-aniline NHEt with diethyl-m-phenylenediamine. D.R.P. 59063.

Fast Neutral Violet C.

 ${\rm Me}_2{\rm N} \underbrace{ \begin{array}{c} {\rm N} \\ {\rm N} \\ {\rm N} \\ \end{array}}_{\rm NH_2}.$ 

By the oxidation of a mixture of p amino-diphenylamine, o-toluidine and aniline. NH<sub>2</sub> D.R.P. 49853.

Methylene Violet.

BN RRW RRA

3RA Extra

1111111111

Safranine (various marks) is obtained by the oxidation of a mixture of toluylene diamine and ortho toluidine and subsequent condensation with aniline or ortho-toluidine. It consists of a mixture of:

$$Me$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_3$ 
 $NH_4$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_4$ 
 $NH_5$ 
 $NH_5$ 
 $Me$ 
 $NH_5$ 
 $Me$ 
 $NH_6$ 
 $Me$ 
 $NH_6$ 
 $Me$ 
 $NH_6$ 

Magdala red or fast pink for silk is obtained by fusing a-naphthyl-azo-a-naphthylamine with a-naphthylamine. It consists of a mixture of:

Aniline Black 23 is obtained by the oxidation of aniline and has been ascribed the formula:

although this cannot be said to be proved. It is always developed on the fibre, although the dyestuff itself is made to some extent for use as a pigment.

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> B., 24, 2167. <sup>2</sup> A. Ch., 59, 384.

<sup>8</sup> B., 17, 319; 18, 1228.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> B., 19, 725.

<sup>6</sup> B., 19, 917.

$$\bigcirc_{\text{OH}} + \bigcirc_{\text{OH}} \longrightarrow \bigcirc_{\text{OH}} \bigcirc_{\text{OH}}$$

or a nitroso-phenol or nitroso-base can be condensed with a phenolic compound of such a nature that condensation must take place in the ortho-position to a hydroxyl group, e.g. resorcinol:

$$_{\mathrm{Me_{2}N}}$$
 +  $_{\mathrm{HO}}$   $_{\mathrm{OH}}$   $\longrightarrow$   $_{\mathrm{Me_{2}N}}$   $_{\mathrm{HO}}$ 

The oxy-indophenol or oxy-indamine then passes into the oxazine by oxidation:

If, however, the phenol is  $\beta$ -naphthol, the mechanism of this oxidation is somewhat different, and probably takes place in the following steps:

In all cases the oxidation takes place at the expense of some of the nitroso-compound, the equation being:

$$3 \text{HCIMe}_2 \text{NC}_6 \text{H}_4 \text{NO} + 2 \text{C}_{10} \text{H}_6 \text{OH} = 2 \text{Me}_2 \text{CINC}_6 \text{H}_4 \overset{\text{N}}{\underset{\text{O}}{\bigvee}} \text{C}_{10} \text{H}_6 \\ + \text{Me}_2 \text{NHClC}_6 \text{H}_4 \text{NH}_2 + 2 \text{H}_2 \text{O}$$

Again, the components can be selected so that the indamine or indophenol contains two hydroxyl groups, both of which are in the ortho-position to the nitrogen atom, and

#### SECTION IX.—THE THIAZINES

THESE are all derived from thiodiphenylamine:

Thiodiphenylamine itself and its amino- and hydroxy-derivatives are colourless or pale yellow compounds. The amino- and oxy- derivatives, however, are *leuco-* compounds and rapidly absorb oxygen from the atmosphere and pass into the dyes, the thiazimes and thiazones:

It will be seen that the thiazines are really indamines and indophenols in which the ring has been closed by sulphur. This closing of the ring increases the stability, and although the thiazines are not very fast colours they are much faster than the corresponding indamines and indophenols.

The first thiazine dye was obtained by Lauth,  $^1$  in 1876, by oxidizing p-phenylenediamine in the presence of sulphuretted hydrogen.

with sulphuretted hydrogen to give the mercaptan (II.). This then condenses with another molecule of the quinone diimide to form III., which passes into the *leuco*- dye by loss of ammonia. This in turn becomes oxidized to the dyestull proper:

Instead of using two molecules of the diamine, the preparation can be carried out by oxidizing an equimolecular mixture of the diamine and dimethyl aniline. In this case the mercaptan is formed as before and then undergoes indamine formation with the dimethyl aniline. The quinonoid indamine then undergoes intramolecular condensation with the mercaptan group to form *leuco*-methylene blue:

$$\underset{Me_{2}N}{\overset{NH_{2}}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{SH}{\overset{N}{\bigoplus}}\underset{Me_{2}N}{\overset{NH}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{NMe_{2}Cl}{\overset{NH}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{S}{\overset{NH}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{NMe_{2}}{\overset{NH}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{S}{\overset{N}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{NMe_{2}N}{\overset{NH}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{SH}{\overset{N}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{NMe_{2}N}{\overset{NH}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{SH}{\overset{N}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{NMe_{2}N}{\overset{N}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{N}{\overset{N}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{N}{\overset{N}{\longrightarrow}}\underset{$$

Oehler has patented a process for producing methylene blue by treating nitrosodimethyl aniline with concentrated sulphuric acid and zinc sulphide.<sup>5</sup> Here the first step is probably the reduction of the nitroso- compound to the



diamine. The sulphuretted hydrogen is probably simultaneously oxidized to the unknown sulphoxylic acid, HO—S—OH, which then condenses with the diamine with loss of water:

$$Me_{2}N$$

$$HO_{S}OH$$

$$NMe_{2}N$$

$$NH$$

$$NMe_{2}N$$

$$NMe_{3}$$

In support of this it may be pointed out that Smiles and his students have shown that mercaptans condense with aromatic compounds in the presence of strong sulphuric acid to form sulphides. Thus, thioxanthones are obtained in excellent yield when thiosalicylic acid is heated with an aromatic compound in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

A similar reaction takes place between thiosalicylic acid and malonic ester (see p. 167).

The manufacture of methylene blue is now always carried out by the thiosulphate process. In this dimethyl-p-phenylene-diamine is oxidized in the presence of sodium thiosulphate, when the quinone imide at once condenses with the thiosulphuric acid to form the thiosulphonic acid:

This can be converted into methylene blue by two processes, viz. it can be reduced to the mercaptan and this then oxidized in the presence of dimethyl aniline, when indamine formation, etc., takes place; or, more usually, the thiosulphonate is oxidized directly in the presence of dimethyl aniline to the corresponding indamine, which on heating loses sulphurous acid with the formation of methylene blue:

$$NH_2$$
 $S=SO_3H$ 
 $NMe_2$ 
 $NMe_2CI$ 
 $NMe_2N$ 
 $NMe_2CI$ 
 $NMe_2CI$ 

The manufacture of methylene blue is carried out as follows. Dimethylaniline (12 kilos) is dissolved in 40 litres of water and 65 kilos of strong hydrochloric acid and converted into its nitroso compound by the addition of 7.1 kilos of sodium nitrite (see p. 81). The nitroso compound is not isolated but immediately reduced to the diamine by the addition of zinc dust, of which sufficient must be added to neutralize the whole of the hydrochloric acid. After diluting to 500 litres 16 kilos of dimethyl aniline hydrochloride and 50 kilos of sodium thiosulphate are added, and then a concentrated solution of 25 kilos of sodium dichromate run in and the whole boiled for two hours. Sufficient sulphuric acid to convert the whole of the chromium and sodium into sulphate is next added and the solution boiled free from sulphur dioxide. The leuco base is then oxidized by the addition of 8 kilos of neutral sodium chromate and the dyestuff finally salted out.

Other dyes of this series are:

Methylene Green.

New Methylene Blue.

Thiocarmine R.

An interesting series of dyes, which have not yet found application, is obtained when dinitro- or tetranitro-diphenylamine-o-sulphoxide is condensed with an aromatic compound:8

Condensation takes place very readily at the ordinary temperature in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid, and most aromatic compounds react. Benzene, however, does not, and as thiophene does, this forms a very convenient test for thiophene. Soluble products are only obtained when sulphonic acid groups are present.

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

- <sup>1</sup> B., 9, 1035. <sup>2</sup> D.R.P. 1886.

- <sup>8</sup> A., 280, 73. <sup>4</sup> D.R.P. 38,573; 39,757; 45,839.
- <sup>5</sup> D.R.P. 24,125. <sup>6</sup> Soc., **97**, 1290; **99**, 640.
- <sup>7</sup> D.R.P. 38,573. <sup>8</sup> Soc., 98, 145, 1687; 94, 1253; 95, 186, 362, 980.

### SECTION X.—THE INDIGOID DYESTUFFS

THESE are all vat dyes and from the point of view of chemical constitution can be divided roughly into two classes, viz. the indigos and the thioindigos. This division is not a very sharp one, for, as will be seen, some of the dyes contain both an indigo and a thioindigo group.

Indigo itself is by far the most important member of the series, and is in fact the most important dye on the market at present. It has been used since prehistoric times, certain Egyptian mummy cloths having been found to be dyed with it.

Until comparatively recently the whole of the dyestuff used was obtained from natural sources, but during the last few years the synthetical product has displaced the natural.

Natural Indigo.—Indigo occurs in the indigo plant as a glucoside of indoxyl (Indican), which on hydrolysis is split up into indoxyl and glucose, the indoxyl on exposure to the air being at once oxidized to indigo:

$$_{2C_{6}H_{4}}$$
 $\stackrel{CO}{\sim}$  $_{NH}$  $\stackrel{CH_{2}}{\sim}$  =  $_{C_{6}H_{4}}$  $\stackrel{CO}{\sim}$  $_{NH}$  $\stackrel{CO}{\sim}$  $_{C_{6}H_{4}}$ 

The indigo plant (Indigofera tinctoria) was formerly cultivated in Europe, but at present is chiefly grown in

South America and Bengal, although the area under cultivation is rapidly decreasing owing to the use of the synthetic dye. In order to extract the dyestuff the plants are covered with water and allowed to ferment in large vats ("steeping vats") for about fifteen hours. The yellow liquid is then drawn off from the debris and beaten, either mechanically or by hand, so as continually to expose a fresh surface to the air. By this means the indoxyl is oxidized to indigo, which, being insoluble in water, settles out as a fine mud. This is then boiled up with water in order to destroy the ferments, collected by filtration through cloth, pressed and dried.

Syntheses of Indigo.—The great fastness of the shades and the enormous demand for the dyestuff led at an early date to many attempts at its synthesis. The first success was achieved in 1870 by Baeyer and Emmerling, who obtained small quantities of indigo by heating isatine with phosphorus trichloride and acetyl chloride and then oxidizing the product with air.

The next important step was the preparation of the dyestuff by Baeyer from o-nitro-cinnamic acid. This he effected by first saturating the double bond with bromine and then treating the brominated compound with alcoholic potash, so as to form o-nitro-phenyl propiolic acid: <sup>1</sup>

$$C_6H$$
 $C_6H$ 
 $C_6H$ 
 $C_6H$ 
 $C_6H$ 
 $C_6H$ 
 $C_6H$ 
 $C_6H$ 

This was then converted into indigo by two methods, viz. (a) it was converted into isatine by boiling with caustic soda, and this then converted into indigo by reduction with an alkaline solution of glucose; or (b) it was boiled with water, when loss of carbon dioxide took place with the formation of o-nitro-phenyl acetylene. The copper salt of this on oxidation with ferricyanide gave the corresponding diacetylene, which when treated first with concentrated sulphuric acid and then with ammonium chloride passed successively into diisatogen and indigo: 2

Neither of these methods was successful commercially, although nitro-phenyl propiolic acid was used to a small extent for producing indigo directly on the fibre.<sup>3</sup>

The next series of syntheses started from o-nitro-benzaldehyde and were due to Baeyer and Drewson. They found that the condensation product of o-nitro-benzaldehyde and acetone readily loses water to form o-nitro-aceto-cinnamone, which passes into indigo on treatment with caustic alkali: <sup>4</sup>

$$C_{\mathfrak{g}}H_{\mathfrak{q}} \xrightarrow{CHOH-CH_{\mathfrak{g}}-CO-CH_{\mathfrak{g}}} C_{\mathfrak{g}}H_{\mathfrak{q}} \xrightarrow{CH=CH-CO-CH_{\mathfrak{g}}} C_{\mathfrak{g}}H_{\mathfrak{q}}$$

The bisulphite compound of the condensation product of acetone and o-nitro-benzaldehyde is used to a small extent for calico printing under the name of indigo salt. In this process the colour is developed on the fibre by treatment with strong caustic alkali solution.

None of the above syntheses have been commercially successful owing to the high price of toluene.

The commercial preparation of indigo is now exclusively carried out by Heumann's process. This consists in fusing phenyl glycine, or phenyl glycine-o-carboxylic acid, with caustic alkali and then oxidizing the indoxyl formed with air:

As originally proposed the method did not appear at all promising, as the yields did not exceed 8 per cent.; but the

anthranilic acid, prepared from naphthalene as described on pages 41, 80, with chloracetic acid, or according to Bucherer from anthranilic acid and formaldehyde as described above.

A very interesting synthesis of indigo, which however has not proved successful on the large scale, is due to Sandmeyer.<sup>8</sup> In this case the starting out substance is aniline, which is first converted into thiocarbanilide by heating it with carbon bisulphide. This is then treated with potassium cyanide and the nitrile thus obtained converted into the corresponding thioamide by treatment with yellow ammonium sulphide:

This, on treatment with concentrated sulphuric acid, passes into  $\alpha$ -isatine anilide, which on reduction with ammonium sulphide loses aniline and forms indigo:

Of the homologues of indigo only two have proved to be of commercial value. The dimethyl indigo obtained from the phenyl glycine derived from o-toluidine  $^9$  is indigo T or G, and the dibromo- product of that derived from the glycine of  $\beta$ -naphthylamine  $^{10}$  is ciba green G.

Of the substitution products of indigo, the sulphonic acid has long been known, and at one time was used to a considerable extent as an acid dye for wool and silk under the name of indigo carmine. Its use is now almost obsolete as, unlike indigo itself, the shades obtained are very fugitive.

The halogenated indigos are of comparatively recent introduction and are of very great importance. Those halogenated in the para-position to the nitrogen atoms are very like indigo in shade, but rather brighter, whereas those

the market as ciba heliotrope. It is prepared by condensing dibromisatine with dibromindoxyl.<sup>13</sup>

Very closely related to the indigos is a series of dyes obtained by condensing  $\alpha$ -isatine chloride or  $\alpha$ -isatine anilide with phenols having a free ortho-position: <sup>14</sup>

In the same way helindon blue 3GN is obtained from a-oxy-anthranol: 15

#### THE THIOINDIGOS.

These are very similar to the indigos in structure, but in them one or both of the imino- groups have been replaced by a sulphur atom. Like the indigos they are all vat dyes, and

The first member of the series to be prepared was discovered by Friedlander in 1905. He obtained it by fusing ocarboxy-phenyl thioglycollic acid (I.) with caustic alkali:

The first action of the caustic potash is to condense the aryl thioglycollic acid (I.) to I-oxy-3-thionaphthene (II.),

which then undergoes oxidation to form the dyestuff (III.). A very ingenious modification of this process is due to Prescott, Hutchison and Smiles.<sup>17</sup> They found that when thiosalicylic acid is condensed with malonic acid in the presence of sulphuric acid or chlorsulphonic acid, first oxythionaphthene (IV.) and then thioindigo is formed. This process depends on the formation of a sulphoxylic acid (II.) which then condenses with the malonic acid: <sup>18</sup>

A third synthesis consists in condensing thiosalicylic acid with dichlorethylene and then heating the product with dehydrating agents: 19

$$C_{6}H_{4} \stackrel{S}{\swarrow} CH = CH \stackrel{S}{\swarrow} C_{6}H_{4} \rightarrow C_{6}H_{4} \stackrel{S}{\swarrow} C = C \stackrel{S}{\swarrow} C_{6}H_{4}$$

Finally, the alkoxy-thioindigos can be obtained by condensing the alkoxy-mercaptans with acetyl chloride in the presence of aluminium chloride and then oxidizing the mercapto-aceto-phenone thus obtained: 20

$$_{RO}$$
  $\rightarrow$   $_{RO}$   $\stackrel{-COCH_3}{\rightarrow}$   $\rightarrow$   $_{RO}$   $\stackrel{-CO}{\longrightarrow}$   $>$   $C-CC$   $<$   $>$   $C-CC$ 

The influence of substituents on the colour of the thioindigo dyes is important, and the following rules are fairly general: Alkyl groups have a powerful influence. When at 4 or 6 they render the shade more blue; when at 3 or 5 they render it redder. The influence of halogen atoms is similar but not so strongly marked. Substituents at 4 have a greater effect than those at 6.

Alkoxy-groups have a very powerful effect. They blue the shade when at 4 or 6 and redden it when at 3 or 5. A methoxy-group at 3 or 5 reddens the shade even when there is a chlorine atom at 4, and a methoxy-group at 4 or 6 blues the shade even when there is a methyl group at 3 or 5.

Thioindigo itself (thioindigo red B) dyes from an alkaline hydrosulphite vat in blueish-red shades which are remarkable for their extraordinary fastness, especially towards chlorine. So fast are the shades in fact that the whole of the cotton can be dissolved away with bleach without affecting the dye. Of its halogen substitution products the most important are ciba bordeaux or 5.5'-dibromothioindigo \* and thioindigo red BG or helindon red B, which is the corresponding chlorine compound. Of the alkoxy-thioindigos, helindon orange R is the 5.5'-diethoxy- compound, which passes into helindon scarlet R on the entrance of halogen atoms. The corresponding thiethoxy compound,

$$EtS-C_6H_4 \stackrel{CO}{<} C=C \stackrel{CO}{>} C_6H_4-SEt$$

is helindon scarlet S or thioindigo scarlet S.

An important class of dyes, the hemithioindigos, is obtained by condensing oxythionaphthene with  $\alpha$ -diketones. The most important member of this series is thioindigo scarlet R or ciba red B, and is obtained by condensing oxythionaphthene with isatine:  $^{21}$ 

$$C_6H_4 \underbrace{\begin{array}{c} S \\ CO \end{array}} C \underbrace{\begin{array}{c} H_4 \\ O \end{array}} O = C \underbrace{\begin{array}{c} C_6H_4 \\ CO \end{array}} NH \ \, \rightarrow \ \, C_6H_4 \underbrace{\begin{array}{c} CO \\ S \end{array}} C = C \underbrace{\begin{array}{c} C_6H_4 \\ CO \end{array}} NH$$

Its dibromo derivative is thioindigo scarlet G or ciba red G. An isomeric compound is obtained by condensing oxythionaphthene with  $\alpha$ -isatine anilide and is placed on the market as ciba violet A:

$$C_6H_4 \stackrel{\mathrm{CO}}{\searrow} CH | \underline{H} - \underline{PhNH} | -C \stackrel{\mathrm{N}}{\swarrow} C_6H_4 \\ \rightarrow C_6H_4 \stackrel{\mathrm{CO}}{\searrow} C = C \stackrel{\mathrm{CO}}{\searrow} C_6H_4$$

Finally, an interesting dyestuff, ciba scarlet G, is obtained

\* The atoms in thioindigo are usually numbered as follows:--

## SECTION XI.—THE ANTHRAQUINONOID DYES

THE anthraquinone dyes can be divided into three classes, viz. (i) Mordant Dyes, (ii) Acid Dyes, (iii) Vat Dyes.

THE ANTHRAQUINONOID MORDANT DYES.

These consist of polyoxy-anthraquinone derivatives, and although they are almost insoluble in water they are sufficiently soluble to unite with metallic oxides to form highly coloured salts ("lakes"). The colour of these lakes often depends on the metallic atom present, and hence the dyes are frequently polygenic in nature. Alizarine, for example, dyes in red shades on an alumina mordant and in violet shades on a stannic or chrome mordant.

It was formerly believed that only those oxy-anthraquinones which contained two hydroxyl groups in the 1 and 2 positions were capable of acting as mordant dyes 1 (Rule of Kostanecki and Liebermann). Although fairly general this rule is not absolutely correct, but all the commercially valuable oxy-anthraquinones do contain such hydroxyl groups.

The preparation of the oxy-anthraquinones can be carried out by two methods, viz. by inserting the hydroxyl groups into anthraquinone or by building up the anthraquinone nucleus from phenolic compounds.

Hydroxylation of Anthraquinone.—Hydroxyl groups can be inserted into the anthraquinone nucleus by the same methods as are used for preparing phenols and naphthols, the most important of which is the fusion of the corresponding sulphonic acids with caustic alkali. As

this point for 36-48 hours. After cooling the charge is acidified with dilute acid and the alizarine filtered off and washed. For this purpose water *absolutely* free from iron must be used or the shade will be spoilt.

On sulphonation under ordinary conditions the sulphonic group enters the 3-position, giving alizarine red S, a dyestuff sometimes used in volumetric work as a substitute for methyl orange. When the sulphonation is carried out in the presence of mercury salts the sulphonic group enters the  $\alpha$ -positions of the ring which does not contain the hydroxyl groups, and a mixture of alizarine-5- and alizarine-8-sulphonic acids is obtained. This mixture forms the commercial erweco acid alizarine red BS.8

When alizarine is nitrated either in glacial acetic acid solution or dissolved or suspended in some neutral solvent, such as nitrobenzene or ligroin, or in sulphuric acid solution in the presence of boric acid,<sup>9</sup> 3-nitro-alizarine (alizarine orange A or N) is formed. This on reduction gives the corresponding amino-alizarine which, when heated with glycerine, sulphuric acid and nitro-benzene (Skraups reaction), gives the corresponding quinoline (alizarine blue) which dyes cotton in remarkably fast shades.<sup>10</sup>

This last, on oxidation with oleum, passes first into quinalizarine quinoline (alizarine green X), 11 and then into pentaoxy-anthraquinone quinoline (alizarine indigo blue S). 12

Alizarine Green X. Alizarine Indigo Blue S.

Both these dyes are usually placed on the market as their bisulphite compounds.

If, on the other hand, the diacetyl or dibenzoyl derivative of alizarine is nitrated, <sup>13</sup> the nitro-group enters the α-position and, on splitting off the acyl groups, 4-nitro-alizarine is obtained. This is of no importance as a dye, but on reduction passes into the amino-compound <sup>14</sup> (alizarine garnet), which is capable of dyeing unmordanted silk in violet-red shades. Treated by Skraup's method it yields the corresponding quinoline (alizarine green S). <sup>15</sup>

This latter dye, it will be noticed, only differs from alizarine blue in the position of the quinoline nitrogen atom. It is quite remarkable that such a slight difference in the structure should cause a change in colour from blue to green. As will be seen later, however, the anthraquinone acridones show a similar change in colour when the positions of the imino- and carbonyl groups are reversed.

On oxidation alizarine yields a variety of products according to the conditions of the experiment. When the oxidation is carried out with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid the chief product is purpurin (1.2.4-trioxy-anthraquinone), a dyestuff found together with alizarine in madder but very little used. The shades are similar to those obtained from alizarine.

When the oxidation is carried out with oleum, the chief product is quinalizarine <sup>16</sup> (1.2.5.8-tetraoxy-anthraquinone), which is placed on the market as alizarine bordeaux. This, on oxidation with manganese dioxide, passes into alizarine cyanine R), <sup>17</sup> which gives blue shades on an alumina mordant.

Carried Service

OH OH OH Alizarine Bordeaux. Alizarine Cyanine R.

When anthraquinone-2.6-disulphonic acid is fused under pressure with caustic alkali and potassium chlorate, 1.2.6-trioxy-anthraquinone (flavopurpurin, alizarine GI,RG, SCD or X) is obtained. This dyes in very similar shades to alizarine. A similar compound, 1.2.7-trioxy-anthraquinone (isopurpurin, alizarine GD, RX or SX Extra), is obtained in the same way from the 2.7-disulphonic acid. In both cases the reaction is exactly analogous to that which takes place in the preparation of alizarine:

If 1.5-dinitro-anthraquinone is heated with 40 per cent. oleum with or without the addition of a reducing agent, 1.3.4.5.7.8-hexaoxy-anthraquinone (anthracene blue WR) is formed. The same compound is formed when anthrarufin or anthrachrysone is oxidized with oleum. 18

As stated on page 170, oxy-anthraquinones can also be formed by building up the anthraquinone nucleus from suitable phenolic compounds. This can be done in three ways—

(i) Phthalic anhydride is condensed with a phenol in the presence of aluminium chloride and the resulting obenzoyl benzoic acid then heated with sulphuric acid or other dehydrating agent. 19 This reaction is very general and is not confined to the phenols. Thus anthraquinone itself can be obtained by condensing phthalic anhydride with benzene:

The yields are usually excellent, but a whole (double) molecule of aluminium chloride must be used. Were it not for this disadvantage the synthesis of anthraquinone by this method might be a commercial success.

- (ii) Phthalic anhydride is condensed with a phenol in the presence of sulphuric acid or zinc chloride. Here pyronines are apt to be formed simultaneously, and with the simpler phenols are the main product (see p. 124). With the polyhydric phenols, however, the method is often quite satisfactory. Thus phthalic anhydride and pyrogallol yield anthragallol <sup>20</sup> (anthracene brown or alizarine brown W, WG, etc.).
- (iii) By heating an oxy-benzoic acid, or a mixture of an oxy-benzoic acid and a benzoic acid derivative. This reaction consists in a simple loss of water between the carboxyl groups and the hydrogen atoms of the benzene ring. Since, as a rule, it is only those hydrogen atoms which are in the para-position to a hydroxyl group which react in this way, it follows that only meta-oxy-benzoic acids can be used. Thus, if a mixture of gallic acid and benzoic acid is heated with sulphuric acid, anthracene brown is obtained: <sup>21</sup>

Anthracene Brown.

a small quantity of hexaoxy-anthraquinone being formed at the same time. This latter compound (rufigallic acid) is the sole product when gallic acid is heated with sulphuric acid: <sup>22</sup>

In exactly the same way 3.5-dioxy-benzoic acid gives anthrachrysone: 23

This, on nitration and sulphonation, passes into a dinitrodisulphonic acid. If this is treated with sodium sulphide the nitro- groups are replaced by mercaptan groups, yielding the dyestuff acid alizarine green B and G, which gives green shades on a chrome mordant: <sup>24</sup>

If, on the other hand, the nitro- groups are reduced with nascent hydrogen the diamino-compound is obtained, which, when treated with caustic alkali, loses ammonia and forms a hexaoxy-anthraquinone disulphonic acid (acid alizarine blue BB and GR).<sup>25</sup>

This dyes in red shades from an acid bath, which become blue on after-treatment with chromium fluoride.

#### THE ANTHRAQUINONOID ACID DYES.

These are usually sulphonic acids of amino-anthraquinone derivatives, and are used for dyeing wool from an acid bath. As a rule they dye in very level shades, which are extremely fast to light.

The oldest, and one of the most valuable dyes of this series, is alizarine saphirol, <sup>26</sup> which is obtained by nitrating and then reducing authrarutin disulphonic acid:

12

#### 178 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

Alizarine Saphirol.

It dyes in very pure shades of blue.

Somewhat similar to this in constitution is erweco acid alizarine red R, obtained by condensing dinitro-anthraflavic acid disulphonic acid with aniline: 27

$$\begin{array}{c|c} SO_3H & CO & NHC_6H_5 \\ HO & OH \\ SO_3H & CO \end{array}$$

Erweco Acid Alizarine Red R.

It dyes wool red from an acid bath, the colour passing into deep blue on after-treatment with chromium fluoride.

Anthraguinone violet is obtained by condensing anthrarufin or 1.5-dinitro-anthraquinone with  $\phi$ -toluidine and then sulphonating the product: 28

Most of the anthraquinone acid dyes, however, are derivatives of quinizarine. Thus, if quinizarine is heated with one molecule of p-toluidine and the product sulphonated we obtain alizarine irisol D,29 which gives blue-violet shades becoming greenish blue on after-chroming. An isomeric compound is obtained by condensing leuco-quinizarine with p-toluidine-2-sulphonic acid, and is placed on the market as alizarine direct violet R or alizarine cyanol R:

If the soluble reduction product has affinity for animal or vegetable fibres, then if the original product is insoluble in water we have a vat dye. The reduction of the dyestuff is almost invariably carried out with an alkaline solution of sodium hydrosulphite, and the oxidation brought about by exposing the fabric to the air.

The anthraquinonoid vat dyes are almost exclusively used for dyeing cotton, the vats being too strongly alkaline for wool or silk. As a rule the cotton is dyed as yarn, as it is almost impossible to dye piece goods in even shades. They are also used to a considerable extent for printing.

In chemical composition the anthraquinonoid vat dyes differ very much, some of them being extremely simple and others very complex. They are noted for their extraordinary fastness, especially to light.

Considered from the point of view of chemical structure the anthraquinonoid vat dyes can be divided into eight classes.

(i) Homologues of Anthraquinone.—Anthraquinone is too weakly coloured to be used as a dyestuff, but naphthanthraquinone has been placed on the market under the name of sirius yellow G. It is prepared by condensing naphthalene with phthalic anhydride in the presence of aluminium chloride and then heating the resulting o-naphthoyl benzoic acid with concentrated sulphuric acid: 31

Of much greater importance is anthraflavone G, which is obtained by fusing  $\beta$ -methyl anthraquinone with caustic potash.<sup>32</sup> It was originally believed to have the structure:

#### 182 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

(ii) The Benzanthrones.—These contain two anthraquinone residues fused together in a more or less complicated manner, but only two carbonyl groups. The simplest member of the series is pyranthrone <sup>33</sup> or indanthrene golden orange G, which is obtained by the loss of two molecules of water from 2.2'-dimethyl-1.1'-dianthraquinonyl:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & \\ & & & \\ \hline & & \\ \hline$$

On halogenation the depth of the colour is increased, the chlorinated compound <sup>34</sup> being indanthrene golden orange R and the brominated compound <sup>35</sup> indanthrene scarlet G.

Of more complicated structure are the blue and violet dyes of this class. Thus, when anthraquinone is heated with glycerine and concentrated sulphuric acid, benzanthrone (I) is formed, <sup>36</sup> which on fusion with caustic potash passes into violanthrene BS or indanthrene dark blue, which probably has the structure II and dyes cotton in very fast red-violet shades. <sup>37</sup>

On halogenating <sup>38</sup> this gives indanthrene violet RT, and on nitrating <sup>39</sup> viridanthrene or indanthrene green B. It is rather remarkable that a compound containing a nitrogroup should be satisfactory as a vat dye, as one would expect reduction of this to take place in the vat.

considerable influence on the shade of the benzoyl aminoanthraquinones, and the following rules are fairly general.

The benzoyl-amino-group being at I:

- (a) Substituents at 2 have very little effect.
- (b) Substituents at 4, other than halogen atoms or alkoxy-groups, have a great effect in shifting the shade towards the blue end of the spectrum. A second benzoyl amino-group in this position produces a yellow-red dyestuff, whereas an amino-group produces a still greater effect, monobenzoyl-1.4-diamino-anthraquinone dyeing in corinth shades. The influence of the hydroxyl group is still more marked, 4-oxy-1-benzoyl amino-anthraquinone dyeing in blue-red shades. As would be expected, the nitro-group shifts the colour right into the violet.
- (c) Most substituents at 5 have little effect, a nitrogroup merely producing orange shades. The influence of primary, secondary, and tertiary amino-groups, however, is more marked, the entrance of these groups leading to red or bordeaux colours.
- (d) Although but little data is available, substituents at 8 seem to exert much the same effect as those at 4. If there are active substituents at both 4 and 8, then blue or violet dyes are obtained. Thus, 4.8-dihydroxy-1.5-dibenzoylamino-anthraquinone dyes in blue shades, 4-hydroxy-1.8-dibenzoylamino-anthraquinone in violet shades, and 1.4.5.9-tetrabenzoylamino-anthraquinone in red-violet shades.

The manufacture of the acyl amino-anthraquinones is very simple. They are invariably formed by boiling the corresponding amino-anthraquinone with the acid, or better with the acid chloride, in solution in some neutral solvent of high boiling-point, such as nitro-benzene.

(iv) The Anthraquinone Imides.—The secondary aminoanthraquinones are usually red or bordeaux dyes, and are readily obtained by condensing an amino-anthraquinone with a chloro-anthraquinone in the presence of sodium carbonate or acetate and either copper powder or cuprous chloride. Most of the dyes contain three anthraquinone residues. The most important members of the series are:

Indanthrene Bordeaux B.

Indanthrene Red G and R.

 $CI[6]C_{14}H_6O_2[x]NH[2]C_{14}H_6O_2[7]NH[x]C_{14}H_6O_2[7]CI$ Indanthrene Bordeaux B Extra.

 $\begin{array}{l} \text{MeO}[4] C_{14} H_6 O_2[\mathtt{r}] N H[\mathtt{z}] C_{14} H_6 O_2[6] N H[\mathtt{r}] C_{14} H_6 O_2[4] O Me \\ \text{Algol Bordeaux 3B.} \end{array}$ 

Algol red B is also an anthraquinone imide, but in addition contains a pyridine ring.<sup>46</sup> It is obtained by condensing  $\alpha$ -brom-anthraquinone with methylamine and then acetylating the product (I). This acetyl derivative (II) on loss of water passes into III, which when brominated and then condensed with  $\beta$ -amino-anthraquinone gives the dyestuff (IV):

The entrance of halogen atoms into the indanthrene molecule produces dyestuffs of a rather greener shade, but at the same time renders the oxidation to the azine less easy. Hence the halogenated indanthrenes are faster to chlorine than indanthrene itself. The most important of them are the dichloro- derivative <sup>50</sup> (indanthrene blue CCD) and the dibromo- derivative <sup>51</sup> (indanthrene blue GC).

The oxidation of the cyclic hydrazine to the corresponding azine could obviously also be prevented by replacing the two imino-hydrogen atoms by alkaly radicles. This has been done by Bayer and Co., who place the di-N-methyl derivative <sup>52</sup> on the market as algol blue K. This dyestuff is prepared by heating 2-brom-1-methylamino-anthraquinone with sodium acetate and cuprous or cupric chloride.

A dihydroxy compound <sup>53</sup> (algol blue 3G) is made by heating 1-amino-2-brom-4-oxy-anthraquinone with caustic soda and copper powder.

An isomer of indanthone has been described.<sup>54</sup> It is prepared by condensing 2.3-diamino-anthraquinone with alizarine and has the formula:

(vi) The Flavanthrenes.—These consist of highly condensed dianthraquinonyl derivatives containing only two carbonyl groups. The best known member of the series is flavanthrene itself (indanthrene yellow G and R). This appears as a side product in the manufacture of indanthrene blue RS, but is best obtained by heating  $\beta$ -amino-anthraquinone with antimony pentachloride in nitro-benzene solution. The constitution of the dye was proved by Scholl, G who synthesized it as follows:

### SECTION XII.—THE QUINOLINE DYES

THERE are a few compounds derived from quinoline which have tinctorial properties, although all of them are of very minor importance.

Cyanine.—This was discovered by Williams in 1856, and is obtained by heating equimolecular proportions of quinoline and lepidine ( $\gamma$ -methyl quinoline) with alkyl iodides (two molecules) in the presence of alkali. The mono-acid salts are blue, but the diacid salts are colourless. As the mono-acid salts are strongly basic and are capable of absorbing carbon dioxide from the air to form the colourless diacid salts, the substance is useless as a dye. Some of the cyanines are used for preparing orthochromatic photographic plates.

Their constitution is not known, but they are probably triphenyl methane derivatives.

Quinoline Red.—This is probably also a triphenyl methane derivative. It has the formula  $C_{26}H_{10}N_2Cl$ . It is prepared by condensing crude coal tar quinoline with benzotrichloride. According to Hoffmann it consists of two dyes, one formed by the union of a molecule of benzotrichloride with a molecule of quinoline and one of quinaldine, and the other by the union of benzotrichloride with isoquinoline and quinaldine. It dyes silk and wool red, and the shades are strongly fluorescent, but very loose to light. Like the cyanines it finds application in the preparation of orthochromatic plates.

Vongerichten 1 has shown that on oxidation it gives a-quinolyl-a-isoquinolyl ketone:

# SECTION XIII.—THE ACRIDINE DYES

THE simple acridines are pale yellow compounds which are noted for the strong fluorescence they exhibit. They may be regarded as desmotropic substances exhibiting double symmetrical tautomerism:

$$\bigcirc$$
 CH  $\bigcirc$  S  $\bigcirc$  CH  $\bigcirc$  S  $\bigcirc$  CH  $\bigcirc$  N

The entrance of the amino-group increases the colour and at the same time confers tinctorial properties on the acridines. The commercial dyes all contain an amino-group in the paraposition to the ms-carbon atom, and the increase in colour may be due to this rendering a third desmotropic form possible:

$$_{NH_2}$$
 $_{CH}$ 
 $_{NH_3}$ 
 $_{NH_4}$ 
 $_{NH_5}$ 
 $_{NH_5$ 

The first acridine dye was obtained by Nicholson in 1863 from the mother liquors from the manufacture of magenta. The constitution of this compound was discovered by Fischer and Koerner, who prepared it by condensing o-nitro-benzaldehyde with aniline and then reducing the nitro-group. The triamino-triphenyl methane thus obtained passed into the acridine on oxidation:

#### 194 COAL TAR DYES AND INTERMEDIATES

The dye is still used to a considerable extent, especially for colouring leather, under the names of chrysaliline, leather yellow, phosphine, etc. The commercial article is a mixture of the above acridine and the corresponding toluene homologue. Its formation as a bye-product in the manufacture of magenta is obviously due to part of the condensation taking place in the ortho-position:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
NH_2 & NH_2 &$$

But few acridine compounds are of any importance as dyes. They are obtained by condensing aldehydes with meta-diamines in acid solution and then closing the acridine ring by loss of ammonia (heating with hydrochloric acid under pressure). Thus, when formaldehyde is condensed with *m*-toluylene diamine, a tetramino-ditolyl methane is formed (II). This when heated with hydrochloric acid under pressure gives the dihydroacridine (III), which on oxidation (air or ferric chloride) passes into the dyestuff, acridine yellow (IV):

Benzoflavine  $^2$  is formed in the same way from m-toluy-lene diamine and benzaldehyde. It has the formula:

Charles .

A few acridine dyes have been obtained by fusing the acetyl derivatives of asym.-dialkyl-m-diamines with phthalic anhydride and then hydrolysing the product, when simultaneous loss of ammonia takes place: 3

Other acridine dyes are:

#### REFERENCES AND LITERATURE.

<sup>1</sup> B., 17, 203. D.R.P. 52,324. <sup>2</sup> B., 82, 2352. D.R.P. 43,714. <sup>8</sup> B., 42, 3631.

# SECTION XIV.—THE SULPHUR OR SULPHIDE COLOURS

The composition of this important class of dyes is quite unknown, and they are manufactured by empirical methods, details being preserved very strictly as trade secrets. The first dyestuff of this class was obtained in 1873 by Croissant and Bretonièrre, who, by heating various organic waste products such as bran, wood chips, straw, etc., with sulphur and sodium sulphide, obtained a substance which was soluble in sodium sulphide solution and capable of dyeing cotton in brown or brown-black shades. This they named Cachou de Laval. Since then the sulphur melt has been enormously extended, it being the general routine in the dye factories to submit every new aromatic compound obtained to the sulphur melt under various conditions.

The sulphide dyes are only applicable to cotton, which they dye from a bath containing sodium sulphide, although recently sulphide colours have been introduced which require a hydrosulphite vat. They dye in very fast shades of yellow, brown, blue, violet, and black, although the colours are usually rather dull. True reds have not yet been obtained.

The condition of the dye in the dye bath is uncertain, but it is probably present as a reduction product, as many of the dyes require subsequent oxidation on the fibre, although this is not always the case.

The chemical composition of the dyes is still quite unknown, but they probably consist chiefly of very complicated thiazine compounds containing a large number of thiazine rings and probably also mercaptan groups. At the same time it is likely that many of them also contain thiazole groups, thus resembling primuline.

## THE SULPHUR OR SULPHIDE COLOURS 199

by Vidal 12 from p-aminophenol or p-phenylene diamine, and was named Vidal's black after its discoverer. It, however, gives rather brownish shades, and the first deep black (immedial black FF) to be obtained was derived from dinitroindophenol:

$$O = \underbrace{\qquad \qquad NO_2}_{NO_2}$$

or rather the corresponding diphenylamine derivative, obtained by condensing chlordinitrobenzole with p-aminophenol.<sup>13</sup>

The most important black, however, is derived from 1.2.4.-dinitrophenol <sup>14</sup> by fusing with sulphur and sodium sulphide. This is placed on the market by almost all the important firms under various trade names, such as sulphur black, katigen black, immedial black N, etc. It is one of the most important black dyes, the annual consumption being upwards of 5000 tons.

The details of the fusion employed vary widely in different works, but a good black is obtained by dissolving 4 parts of crystallized sodium sulphide and 1½ parts of sulphur in 5 parts of water, and then adding 1 part of dinitrophenol little by little, and finally boiling the whole for 24 hours.

Greens.—Green sulphide colours are usually only obtained when copper sulphate is added to the melt. Thus, when p-nitrophenol is melted with sulphur and sodium sulphide a black (Vidal's black) is obtained, but in the presence of copper sulphate a green dye (Italian green) 15 results. In the same way the indophenol:

$$O = \underbrace{\hspace{1cm}}^{NHPh} SO_8H$$

gives immedial green C.16

4 1 1 Lauretzebes ( Lud's 27 des

at least temporary protection must be offered to the "key" industries, and the future of the dyestuff industry is no doubt largely dependent on the intelligent application of this principle.

The Government, recognizing the national importance of establishing a dyestuff industry, have decided to give financial assistance to manufacturers, and have recently published details of their proposals.\* These provide for financial aid of two kinds, viz. A. Loans, and B. Grants-in-Aid of (1) Buildings and Plant; (2) Research.

Loans.—Loans are to be made chiefly to further the production of special classes of dyes, either not hitherto manufactured in this country, or only manufactured to an insufficient extent, and which entail abnormal expenditure on plant.

Grants-in-Aid.—Grants-in-aid are to be made to meet abnormal depreciation and capital cost of plant due to the war, and will not exceed 40 per cent. of the total cost of the plant and buildings on account of which they are made. They will also be made for Research, by which term is to be understood specialized technical research conducted in close connection with the actual manufacture of dyes and intermediates. The grants must not exceed 40 per cent. of the actual cost of any extensions of laboratory buildings and equipment, and 40 per cent. of the maintenance costs of such buildings.

The general conditions for the granting and administration of loans and grants-in-aid may be summarized as follows:—

- (1) The recipient must apply them to develop in the shortest possible time the manufacture of colours which are in short supply, the nature and quantity of which are to be determined or approved by the Board of Trade.
- \* "Memorandum by the Board of Trade on the Scheme for the Allocation and Administration of the Funds provided by Parliament for the Development of the Dye Industry by means of Financial Assistance to Companies and Firms in Aid of Developments, Extensions, and Research" (Cd. 9194). 1918. Price, 1s. 2d.—Abstracted in J.S.C.I., 1918, p. 428 (Review).

acid-resisting alloys for various purposes, standardization of sizes, etc.

Apart from all schemes of Government aid the future of the dyestuff industry cannot be said to be clear. combination of the two leading firms in this country will leave the supply of dyestuffs more or less in the hands of the combine, and however desirable this may be from the point of view of avoiding wasteful competition, and from the point of view of the shareholders, its desirability from the consumer's point of view is not so clear. It is true that the Government intend to prevent artificial prices being maintained by granting importation licences, but agreements of some sort seem to have been arrived at between the combine and French and American producers. The contents of these agreements have not been published, but if they include arrangements for fixing prices it would seem that the only safeguard would lie in the importation of dyes from Germany: and if, at some future date, the British combine were to make similar arrangements with the German combine, the dyer would be reduced to buying what was offered, and at the price at which it was offered. Such an arrangement may never, of course, be brought about, but with the trade more or less concentrated in the hands of one firm the danger is always present.

From a purely economic point of view the cost of production would probably be at a minimum if the benzole and toluol producers converted their products into intermediates and then sold these to the actual dye-makers.

Owing to the excellent transport facilities enjoyed by most coke-oven undertakings, and to the fact that heat is available free of cost in the form of surplus gas from the ovens, or in the form of blast-furnace gas, the production of intermediates could be carried out by such firms at a minimum cost. Another advantage of this scheme would be that the free sale of intermediates would allow the smaller dye-makers to compete on more even terms with the large undertakings, whereas, at present, they must either make their own intermediates—an expensive operation where

comparatively small quantities of a large number of products are required,—or alternatively they must buy them from their competitors. Such schemes have for some time been under discussion both in this country and in America, but war conditions have so far caused them to be shelved. The arrival of peace may, however, see their realization.

1738





#### INDEX

ACETNAPHTHALIDE disulphonic acid, 54, 62 Acid alizarine blue BB, 177 GR, 177 green B, 177 G. 177 anthraquinone dyes, 177 azo dyes, 101 magenta, 3, 122 Acridine dyes, 193 orange, 195 R Extra, 195 yellow, 194 Acylaminoanthraquinone, 183, 184 Afterchrome azo-dyes, 101 Algol blue 3G, 187 K, 187 bordeaux 3B, 195 pink R, 183 red B, 185 5G, 183 scarlet G, 183 yellow 3G, 183 Ř. 183 WG, 183 Alizarine, 3, 170, 171, 172, 173 GD, 175 GI, 175 RG, 175 RX, 175 SCD, 175 SX Extra, 175 Astrol, 179 blue, 173, 174 bordeaux, 174, 175 brilliant green G, 179 brown W, 176 WG, 176 cyanine green E, 179 G Extra, 179 K, 179 R, 174, 175 cyanol R, 178 direct green G, 179 violet R, 178 garnet, 174

R 2.

Alizarine green S, 174 X, 173 indigo blue S, 173 irisol D, 178 orange A, 173 N, 173 pure blue B. 179 red S, 173 saphirol, 177 yellow GGW, 102 Alkali blue, 123 brown, 109 Amidation, 27 Amino anthraquinone, 42, 43 azo benzole, 32, 100 F-acid, 54, 55 G-acid, 38, 55, 56, 63, 94 naphthol disulphonic acid, 55, 73 G-acid, 56, 73 R-acid, 38, 55 sulphonic acid, 38, 55, 56, 73 phenol, 34, 67 sulphonic acid, 52 R-acid, 38, 55 salicylic acid, 35 Anhydroformaldehyde aniline, 119 Aniline, 29 black, 2, 147, 148 blue, spirit soluble, 122 salt, 30 yellow, 32, 100 Anthracene blue WR, 175 brown, 176 Anthrachrysone, 176 Anthrafiavone G, 180, 181 Anthranilic acid, 41 Anthraquinone, 82 acid dyes, 179 acridone, 188, 189 azines, 186 disulphonic acid, 63, 64 dyes, 170 hydrazine, 186 imides, 184 mordant dyes, 170

210 INDEX

Anthraquinone sulphonic acid, 47, 63, 64 thiourea, 183 thioxanthone, 189 urea, 183 violet, 178 xanthone, 189 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Anramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 123 Azines, 123 Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Razoliet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzaned disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromner's acid, 38, 54, 55  CACHOU de Laval, 3, 196 Captiblue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Chloramthraquinone, 78 benzolc, 75 dinitrobenzole, 18, 66 mitrobenzole, 18 Chromotrope all, 102 Chromotrope acid, 55, 72 Chrysaniline, 2, 101, 194 Chrysoidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Ciba blue 23, 165 bordeaux, 168 grzen, 164 heliotrope, 166 red B, 168 C, 168 Scarlet G, 168 Scarlet G, 168 Caption yellow, 100 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cocruciane, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Corporation, 2, 101 Chromotrope all, 102 caption yellow, 103 Columbia black, 103 Corporation, 78 Colour black, 103 Corporation, 78 Colour black, 103 Corporat		
benzole, 75   dinitrobenzole, 18, 66   nitrobenzole, 18, 66   nitr	Anthraquinone sulphonic acid. 47.	Chloranthraquinone, 78
thiourea, 183 thioxanthone, 189 urea, 183 violet, 178 xanthone, 189 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine C, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 G, 143 Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103 Banische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basie blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzianthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 senzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 90 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzol amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benz		
thioxanthone, 189 urea, 183 violet, 178 xanthone, 189 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Azunines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Babische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 58, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 crinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Coton brown, 197 yellow, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Columbia black, 103 Orange N, 105 Claylon yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 103 Ciba blue 2B, 165 bordeaux, 168 green, 164 heliotrope, 166 rod B, 168 Capit black, 103 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 Coton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Coton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Coton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Co		
urea, 183 violet, 178 xanthone, 189 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 123, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103 Banische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 senzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 90 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 78, 77 Benzyl ch		
urea, 183 violet, 178 xanthone, 180 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 123, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103 Banische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzalthrone, 182 Benzo fast scarlet, 90 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Coromotrope 2B, 102 Chromotropic acid, 55, 72 Chryspohenine, 103 Chryspohenine, 2, 101, 194 Chrysoidine, 3 Chryspohenine, 103 Ciba blue 2B, 165 bordeaux, 168 green, 166 red B, 108 scarlet C, 168 r, 168 violet A, 168 yellow, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cœruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Colour and constitution, 7,	thioxanthone, 189	nitrobenzole, 17
violet, 178 xanthone, 189 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 123, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 C, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103 Banische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzalden, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 richloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77	urea, 183	Chrome violet R. 123
xanthone, 189 Anthrarufin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 C, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophoriblue, 90 red, 90 Azoviolet, 103  Banische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 58, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzaithrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 senzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 richloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 78, 77 Benzyl chloride, 78, 77 Benzyl chloride, 78, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chlori		
Antharunin, 170 Aposafranines, 133 Auramine G, 111 O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 G, 143 Azophenine, 144 Azophenine, 146 Bapische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzoi cacid, 79 Benzoi midgo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl dene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198		
Auramine G, 111  O, 111  Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BADISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo racid, 79 Benzolc acid, 79 Benzol cacid, 79 Benzol amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl deme aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Chrysolidine, 2, 101, 194 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 105 Chroscidine, 106 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 103 Chrysolidine, 103 Chrysolidie, 3 Chrysolidie, 3 Chrysolidie, 106 Chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Clay chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Clayriophenic, 103 Cholor professor		Chromotrope 2.5, 102
Auramine G, 111  O, 111  Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BADISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo racid, 79 Benzolc acid, 79 Benzol cacid, 79 Benzol amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl deme aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Chrysolidine, 2, 101, 194 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 105 Chroscidine, 106 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 103 Chrysolidine, 103 Chrysolidie, 3 Chrysolidie, 3 Chrysolidie, 106 Chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Clay chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Clayriophenic, 103 Cholor professor	Anthrarufin, 170	8.B, 102
Auramine G, 111  O, 111  Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BADISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo racid, 79 Benzolc acid, 79 Benzol cacid, 79 Benzol amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl deme aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Chrysolidine, 2, 101, 194 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysophenine, 103 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 3 Chrysolidine, 105 Chroscidine, 106 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 105 Chroscidine, 103 Chrysolidine, 103 Chrysolidie, 3 Chrysolidie, 3 Chrysolidie, 106 Chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Clay chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Chaux, 168 Cheroscide, 66 Clayriophenic, 103 Cholor professor	Aposafranines, 133	2R. 102
O, 111 Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 G, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badiscate acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi caid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Cachazole indophenole, 131, 198		
Aurantia, 88 Aurines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 C, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BADISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acidgo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl amino anthraquinone, 183 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Grozolia, 79 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  DAHL'S acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 pyellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 Diazotization, 90		
Azines, 123 Azines, 133, 134 Azocarmine B, 143 G, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Babisca acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi caid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Chrysophenine, 103 Ciba blue 21B, 165 bordeaux, 168 grzen, 164 heliotrope, 166 rcd B, 168 C, 168 scarlet G, 168 R, 168 violet A, 168 vellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cosruleine, 125 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191 Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Azines, 133, 134 Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Ciba blue 2B, 168 bordeaux, 168 green, 164 heliotrope, 166 red B, 168 C, 168 Scarlet G, 168 C, 168 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Colour blow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Colour and constitution, 7, 9		Chrysolaine, 3
Azines, 133, 134 Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Ciba blue 2B, 168 bordeaux, 168 green, 164 heliotrope, 166 red B, 168 C, 168 Scarlet G, 168 C, 168 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Colour blow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Colour and constitution, 7, 9	Aurines, 123	Chrysophenine, 103
Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophenine, 144 Azophenine, 144 Azophenor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BADISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 79 Benzoi cacid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 green, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Azines, 133, 134	Ciba blue 2B, 165
G, 143 Azo green, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophoro blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzolc acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 richloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  green, 164 heliotrope, 166 red B, 168 G, 168 Capri blue, 90 red, 168 Cclapton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Colour and constitution, 90 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70		
Azogreen, 116 Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BADISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 58, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 chloride, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198		
Azonium compounds, 133, 139 Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi digo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl inhoride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  red B, 168 Scarlet C, 168 R, 168 Cilayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleñne, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 corile, 105 Columbia black, 103 Corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 6, 168 R, 168 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coulmbia black, 103 Corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Corinth, 103 Corion brown, 197 yellow, 103 Corion brown, 103 C		
Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  G, 168 Cclayton yellow, 169 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Colum and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet G, 168 R, 168 violet A, 168 yellow, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 125, 126 Colum and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Compo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet G, 168 R, 168 xiellew, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 125, 126 Colum and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 5		
Azophenine, 144 Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  G, 168 Cclayton yellow, 169 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Colum and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet G, 168 R, 168 violet A, 168 yellow, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 125, 126 Colum and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Compo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet G, 168 R, 168 xiellew, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 125, 126 Colum and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 5	Azonium compounds, 133, 139	red B, 168
Azophor blue, 90 red, 90 Azo violet, 103  BaDISCHE acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoindigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198		
red, 90 Azo violet, 103  Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  R, 168 violet A, 168 clayion yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coruleine, 125, 120 Columbia black, 103 Compo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cotton brown, 103 Cotton brown, 103 Cotton brown, 103 Cotton brown, 103 C		
Azo violet, 103  Bazis caid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Violet A, 168 yellow, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Cceruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cotton brown, 190 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 corinth, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cotton brown, 190 Columbia black, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Coccein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191 Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 1		D 100
Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 161 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  yellow, 165 Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Corulefne, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cotton br		108
Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi cacid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 161 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Azo violet, 103	violet A, 168
Badische acid, 56, 62 Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi cacid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 161 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Clayton yellow, 109 Cleve's acid, 54, 62 Coeruleine, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Columbia black, 103 Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		vellow, 165
Basic azo dyes, 100 Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Clearlefne, 125, 126 Colour and constitution, 7, 96 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Croccin acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL'S acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Croccin acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL'S acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Croccin acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Damine fast red, 103 g		
Basic blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl indigo for scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Br	Badische acid, 56, 62	
Basle blue, 146 Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198	Basic azo dves, 100	
Bayer's acid, 53, 55, 59 Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198		
Benzal chloride, 76, 77 Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl ichloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103  Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198	Porrer's acid 52 55 50	Colour and constitution, 7, 96
Benzaldehyde, 78 Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Congo brown G, 103 corinth, 103 red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Dayer's actu, 00, 00, 00	Columbia black, 103
Benzanthrone, 182 Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi ndigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103  Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198		
Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  red, 4, 103 Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazotization, 90	Benzaldehyde, 78	
Benzene disulphonic acid, 48 sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Cotton brown, 197 yellow, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191 Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazotization, 90	Benzanthrone, 182	
sulphonic acid, 48 Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzoi indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  DAHL'S acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  DAHL'S acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Benzidine, 40, 92 Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 Caprible, 102 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 Diamine anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		Cotton brown, 197
Benzo fast scarlet, 99 flavine, 194, 195 Benzoi acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  G, 103 R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191 Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazotization, 90		yellow, 103
flavine, 194, 195 Benzoic acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  R, 109 Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazotization, 90		
Benzoic acid, 79 Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromer's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Coupling, 93 Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Cresol, 70 Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  Dahl.'s acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	flavine, 194, 195	
Benzo indigo blue, 103 orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bromner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Cresci, 70 Croccin acid, 53, 55, 59, 94 scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 106 Cyanine, 191  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 green, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Benzoic acid, 79	
orange R, 102 purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl idene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Chocari Strick, 103 crarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  DAHL's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Benzo indigo blue, 103	Cresoi, 70
purpurine, 103 trichloride, 76, 77 Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  scarlet, 102 Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		Crocein acid, 53, 55, 59, 94
trichloride, 76, 77  Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Crystal violet, 117, 121 Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		scarlet, 102
Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183 184 chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Curcumin S, 105 Cyanine, 191  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Cyanine, 191  Cy	trichloride, 76, 77	Curaumin S 105
Cachou de Laval, 3, 198  Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Chloride, 77  Benzyl chloride, 76, 77  Benzyl ichoride, 76, 77  Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23  Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102  Binscheidler's green, 115  Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101  Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102  green, 115  yellow, 103  Brom dimethyl aniline, 93  Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196  Capri blue, 151  Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Cyallile, 191  Dahl's acid, 56, 62  Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81  Developed colours, 111  Diamine fast red, 103  green, 105  G, 103  orange N, 105  pink, 109  yellow, N 102  Diamino anthraquinone, 43  stilbene disulphonic acid, 35  Dianisidine, 41, 90  blue, 104  Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109  Diazotization, 90	Benzoyl amino anthraquinone, 183	
chloride, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Dahl's acid, 56, 62 Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		Cyanine, 191
Benzyl chloride, 76, 77 Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81 Deweloped colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazotization, 90		
Benzylidene aniline, 22, 23 Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Bengyl chloride 76 77	Dahl's acid, 56, 62
Biebrich scarlet, 3, 102 Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Developed colours, 111 Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		Dehydrothiotoluidine, 81
Binscheidler's green, 115 Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Diamine fast red, 103 green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  green, 105 G, 103 orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101 Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Glassiant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Binscheidler's green, 115	
Brilliant benzo fast violet, 102 green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Bismarck brown, 2, 3, 101	green, 105
green, 115 yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  orange N, 105 pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Brilliant benzo fast violet 102	G, 103
yellow, 103 Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  pink, 109 yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Brom dimethyl aniline, 93 Bronner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  yellow, N 102 Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55  Cachou de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Diamino anthraquinone, 43 stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90		
CACHOU de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Stilbene disulphonic acid, 35 Dianisidine, 41, 90 blue, 104 Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Brom dimethyl aniline, 93	
CACHOU de Laval, 3, 196 Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198	Brönner's acid, 38, 54, 55	
Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Diazotization, 90 Diazotization, 90		
Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Diazotization, 90 Diazotization, 90		Dianisidine, 41, 90
Capri blue, 151 Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198  Diazo brilliant scarlet, 109 Diazotization, 90	Cachou de Laval, 3, 196	
Carbazole indophenole, 131, 198 Diazotization, 90		
011		
Dichioranthraquinone, 78		
	Calcinate years, 110	Diemoranturaquinone, 78

Dichlorbenzole, 76	Unversity odinhanulamina 80
Diethylaniline 24	Hexanitrodiphenylamine, 88
Diethylaniline, 34	Hofmann's violet, 2
Dimethylaminobenzene sulphonic	Homorosaniline, 118
acid, 93	Hydrone blue, 4, 131, 198
Dimethyl aniline, 33	Hydroxylation, 66
toluidine, 93	,,,
Dinitro benzole, 15	ICE colours, 103
chlorbenzole, 18, 66	
	Immedial black N, 199
diphenyl amine, 88	FF, 199
naphthalene, 19	green, 199
phenol, 25, 66, 87	indone, 198
toluol, 16	pure blue, 198
Dioxin, 84	yellow, 197
Dioxynaphthalene disulphonic acid,	Indamines, 128
55, 72	Indanthrene, 4
Diphenyl amine, 41	
Diphenylmethana devan 111	blue CCD, 187
Diphenylmethane dyes, 111	GC, 187
Direct cotton colours, 97	R, 186
Direct yellow G, 106	RS, 186, 187, 188
Doebner's violet, 115	bordeaux B, 185
	B Extra, 185
Eclipse brown, 197	brown B, 189
Focine 2 195	copper R, 189
Eosine, 3, 125	dark blue, 182
Erweco acid alizarine red BS, 173	gran D 100
R, 178	green B, 182
Erythrosine, 125	grey B, 189
Eurhodines, 133, 137	golden orange G, 182
Eurhodoles, 133	R, 182
	maroon R, 189
F-ACID, 38	red BN Extra, 188
Fast brown G, 102	G, 175
	R, 185
green O, 84	scarlet G, 182
neutral violet C, 146	violet 2R, 183, 188
pink for silk, 147	R Extra, 183
red A, 102	RN, 188
Flavanthrene, 187	RT, 182
Flaveosine, 195	mollow C 107 100
Flavinduline, 140	yellow G, 187, 188
Flavopurpurin, 175	R, 187, 188
Fluoresceine, 3, 124, 125	Indican, 160
Fuchsine. See Magenta	Indigo, 4, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164
Fuchsone, 113	2B, 165
Fuchsonimine, 113	4B, 165 5B, 165
z domodinimo, 116	5B, 165
0 40 44 00	6B, 165
G-ACID, 53, 55, 60	carmine, 164
Galleine, 125, 126 Gallocyanine, 151	G, 164
Gallocyanine, 151	RB, 165
Gambin R, 84	2R, 165
Y, 84	salt, 162
,	
IT 4000 55 50	T, 164
H-ACID, 55, 73	Indigoid dyes, 160
Helindon blue 3GN, 166	Indophenols, 128
orange R, 168	Indoxyl, 160
red B, 168	Induline B, 144
scarlet R, 168	3B, 144
S, 168	scarlet, 146
yellow 3GN, 183	Indulines, 133, 143
Helio fast yellow 6GL, 183	Ingrain colours, 103
	0

Indina serom a	1 37 117 1 5 11 22
Iodine green, 2	Naphthol F-acid, 55
Iris blue, 153	green B, 85
Isopurpurin, 175	indophenol, 130
Isothionine, 155	sulphonic acid, 53, 54, 55, 56,
Italian green, 199	59, 71, 72, 93, 94
•	yellow S, 87
J-ACID, 54, 56, 73	Norththylomine 25 26 02 04
J 11012, 01, 00, 10	Naphthylamine, 35, 36, 93, 94
h' . crp EE E9	brown, 102
K-ACID, 55, 73	disulphonic acid, 38, 47, 55, 56,
Katigen black, 199	62, 63, 93, 94
Kyrogen brown, 198	sulphonic acid, 38, 54, 55, 56,
indigo, 198	61, 62
	trisulphonic acid, 55, 58, 59
L-ACID, 54, 72	Neutral blue, 140, 146
Lanazyl blue, 102	rad Fytra 120 120
violet, 102	red Extra, 138, 139
Laurent's acid, 54, 56, 61	violet, 139
lauth's wielet 4 155	Neville and Winter's acid, 56, 71
Lauth's violet, 4, 155	New fuchsine, 120
Leather yellow, 194	process, 119
	methylene blue, 152, 158
MADDER, 171	Nicholson's blue, 2, 123
Magdala red, 147	Night blue, 123
Magenta, 1, 116-122	Nile blue A, 152
Malachite green, 3, 113, 115	2B, 152
Martius yellow, 87	Nitronilina 22 22 24 20 41 41
Mauveine, 1, 145	Nitraniline, 22, 23, 24, 30, 81, 91
Meldola's blue, 150	sulphonic acid, 47, 52
Metanilic acid, 51	Nitration, 11
Metanil valley 07	Nitro anisole, 41
Metanil yellow, 97	anthraquinone, 21
Methyl green, 117, 121	benzole, 15
orange, 102	sulphonic acid, 51
orange, 102 violet, <b>2</b> , 120, 121	chlorbenzole, 17
6B, 121	dyes, 86
Methylene blue, 4, 156, 157, 158	naphthalene, 18
green, 158	sulphonic acid, 20, 21, 54
violet, 146	trisulphonic acid, 55, 58, 59
Michler's ketone, 81, 120	
Mikado yellow, 106	phenol, 25, 86
Mimosa, 109	toluol, 16
M.N.T. mixture, 16	sulphonic acid, 51
Monoethylaniline, 34	xylol, 17
methylaniline, 32	Nitrosamine red, 90
nitrobongolo 15	Nitrosodimethylaniline, 81
nitrobenzole, 15	dyes, 84
toluol, 16	naphthol, 84
Mordant azo dyes, 101	phenol, 67, 84
Muscarine, 152	<u>-</u>
$\mu$ -acid, 56, 62	OLD fuchsine process, 117, 118
	Orange I, 3, 102
NAPHTHALENE disulphonic acid, 53,	Orange I, 3, 102 II, 3, 102
54, 55, 58	TIT 3
sulphonic acid, 53, 57	III, 3 IV, 3, 97
trisulphonic acid, 55, 58, 59	Overines 140
Naphthine S, 105	Oxazines, 149
Naphthionic acid, 54, 56, 61	Oxyanthranol, 179
Naphthol, 71, 93, 94	Oxybenzoic acid, 93. See also Sali-
AS, 104	cylic acid
black, 102	Para red, 104
blue black, 102	Pararosaniline, 117, 118
disulphonic acid, 53, 55, 60	Pararosolic acid, 123
·	•